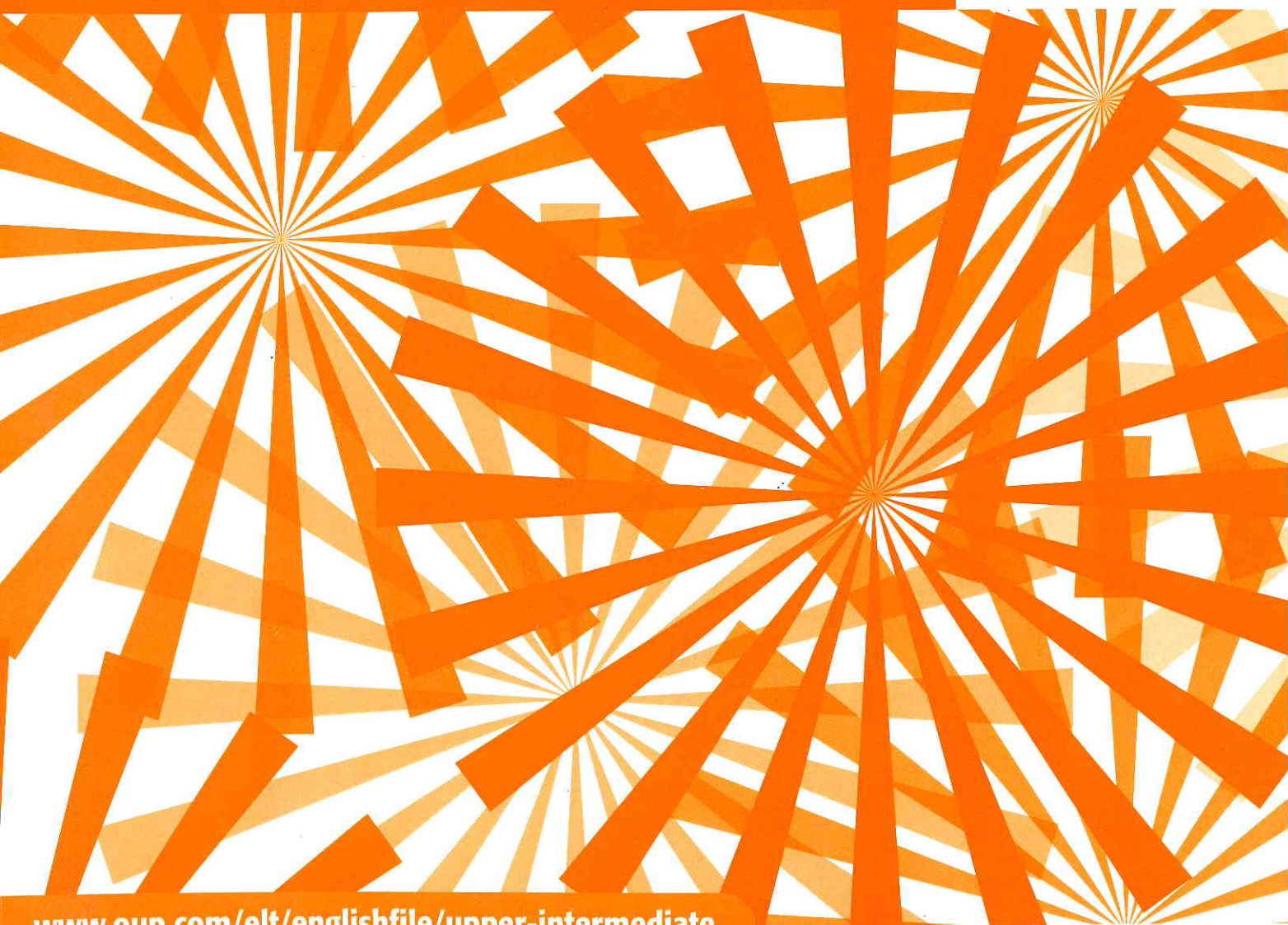


Clive Oxenden
Christina Latham-Koenig
with Jane Hudson



New ENGLISH FILE

Upper-intermediate
Workbook

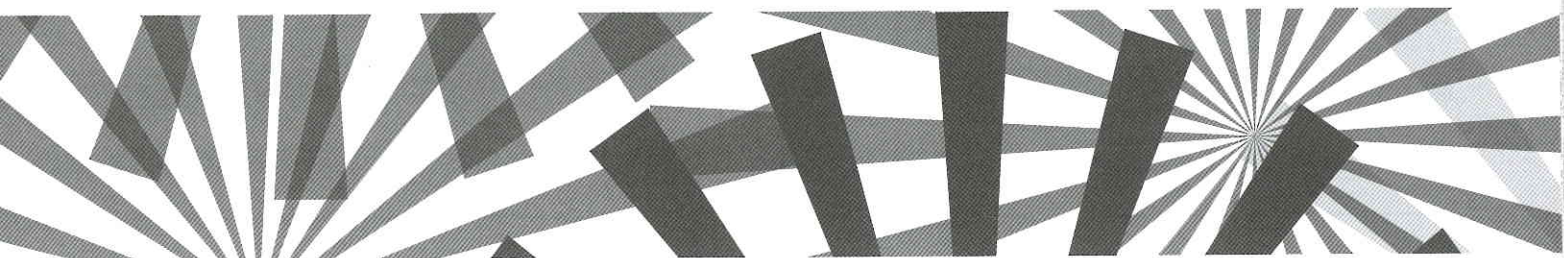


www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upper-intermediate

OXFORD

Clive Oxenden
Christina Latham-Koenig
with Jane Hudson

New **ENGLISH FILE**



**Upper-intermediate
Workbook**

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors of
English File 1 (pub. 1996) and *English File 2* (pub. 1997).

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

1 A	Q and A	4	5 A	The psychology of music	44
1 B	Do you believe it?	7	5 B	Counting sheep	47
1 C	You're the doctor!	10	5 C	Breaking news	50
1	What does the future hold?	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 13	5	Music festivals	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 53
2 A	National stereotypes: truth or myth?	14	6 A	Speaking to the world	54
2 B	Air travel: the inside story	17	6 B	Bright lights, big city	57
2 C	Incredibly short stories	20	6 C	Eureka!	60
2	Flying high	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 23	6	Great cities	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 63
3 A	The one place a burglar won't look	24	7 A	I wish you wouldn't...!	64
3 B	Stormy weather	27	7 B	A test of honesty	67
3 C	Taking a risk	30	7 C	Tingo	70
3	High risk?	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 33	7	Words	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 73
4 A	Would you get out alive?	34		Tapescripts	74
4 B	How I trained my husband	37			
4 C	Let your body do the talking	40			
4	Stage and screen	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH 43			

Judge a man by his questions rather than by his answers.

Voltaire, 18th century French author, humanist, rationalist, & satirist

GRAMMAR question formation

Right (✓) or wrong (✗)? Correct the wrong questions.

- 1 A ~~You have ever been~~ to Greece? ✗ Have you ever been
B Yes, a couple of times.
- 2 Why didn't you tell me the truth? ✓ _____
- 3 Where you usually go on holiday? _____
- 4 Haven't you done the homework?

- 5 What did happen at the meeting yesterday?

- 6 Who is Jack going out with? _____
- 7 How much far is it to the station? _____
- 8 How many people did come to your party?

- 9 Whose jacket did you borrow for the wedding?

- 10 Why James is driving your car? _____
- 11 Excuse me. Can you tell me where are the toilets?

- 12 How much time have you been learning English?

Match the sentences to the short questions.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 I need to leave work an hour early today. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | f |
| 2 I've been thinking. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 3 Mia's going to the theatre tonight. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 4 My brother got a love letter! | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 5 I'm going to New York next week on business. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 6 You're too late! They've gone. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
- a Lucky you! How long for?
 - b Oh yes? Who with?
 - c Where to?
 - d What about?
 - e Really! Who from?
 - f What for?

c Write questions with or without the auxiliary *do*, *does*, or *did*.



- 1 when / your brother / pass his driving test
When did your brother pass his driving test _____ ?
- 2 who / cook / in your family
_____ ?
- 3 what / happen / if I press this button
_____ ?
- 4 how long / you / spend / in Australia last summer
_____ ?
- 5 which / you / prefer – tea or coffee
_____ ?
- 6 what / make / you angry
_____ ?
- 7 who / drink / all the fruit juice I / leave / in the fridge
_____ ?
- 8 how long / take / to get to Norwich from here
_____ ?

d Write indirect questions.

- 1 'Where does Natalie live?'
Do you know where Natalie lives _____ ?
- 2 'What's the time, please?'
Could you tell me _____ ?
- 3 'Where did we park the car?'
Do you remember _____ ?
- 4 'Are there any tickets left for the concert tonight?'
Do you know _____ ?
- 5 'What time does the concert start?'
Can you tell me _____ ?
- 6 'When's Sally's birthday?'
Can you remember _____ ?

2 READING & VOCABULARY

a Read the text quickly. What is Shyno?

Solutions for the *shy romantic*



So what do you do if you see the man or woman of your dreams in the street, on the beach, or in a disco, yet you're too shy to approach them? A 28-year-old Italian medical student, Simone Giancola, has come up with the perfect solution: the Shyno dating service.

Simone says he had his idea when he saw a beautiful woman on a sailing boat and felt frustrated that he couldn't contact her. 'I saw this stunning girl on a boat, quite the most beautiful girl I'd ever seen in my life. The boat had a number, and I thought, "If only the number of that boat was a telephone number!"'

This experience gave him the idea of using T-shirts with a code saved on a database so that people could contact the object of their desire. The Shyno data service works like this. First, you buy a T-shirt with a nickname and number printed on it, which form a

code – for example Cayman 232 or Emily 14. The organizers issue you with a membership card bearing a secret password so that you can register online with the website: www.shyno.com.

Then, when you see the man or woman of your dreams wearing a Shyno T-shirt you can make a note of the code and send an admiring text or video message to the website. Your message is passed on to him or her with your details and your own mobile phone number. If he or she gets in touch with you, then you can take it from there.

The scheme began after a trial in a night club, when 1,000 free T-shirts were given out. Within a week they had generated 14,000 text messages.

More than 20,000 T-shirts have been sold since Shyno was started in Italy last year and the scheme is being advertised on Italian television. *La Stampa* newspaper called Shyno 'the future of the eternal game of seduction'. Mr Giancola expects to have 200,000 customers by the end of this year and a million within three years.

So, what has happened to the stereotypical image of Italian men? Have they lost their macho instincts? Mauro Falcinelli, the scheme's Rome representative, says that times have changed. 'Young women are wary of responding to approaches by strangers. Romance has become a risky business.'

Shyno is also considering extending the dating scheme to car number plates. 'Think how many times you pull up at traffic lights and exchange glances with an attractive person in the car next to you,' Mr Giancola said. 'We Italians sometimes throw across a folded piece of paper with our phone number on it. How much simpler to take a note of the number plate and see if the car is registered on the website.'

b Read the text again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).

- 1 Simone Giancola founded Shyno when he was at university. T
- 2 He got the idea after talking to a beautiful girl on a boat. _____
- 3 You register your real name on the Shyno website. _____
- 4 You can send a text message directly to the person you like. _____
- 5 When they tried the idea in a night club, it was successful. _____
- 6 *La Stampa* is sure the website is a good idea. _____
- 7 Shyno is successful because Italian men have become less macho. _____
- 8 You can also register your car number plate on Shyno. _____

c Look at the highlighted words. What do you think they mean?

d Match the words to the correct definition.

- 1 an informal name used by your family or friends nickname
- 2 the noun from the verb *try* _____
- 3 careful because you are uncertain or afraid _____
- 4 go near to somebody _____
- 5 put your name on an official list _____
- 6 think of, invent _____
- 7 very attractive, beautiful _____
- 8 a card which shows you belong to a club or organization _____



e Complete the sentences with the words from d.

- If you want to vote in the elections, you have to register at the Town Hall.
- My real name is John, but everyone uses my _____, which is 'Curly'.
- I forgot my _____ so they wouldn't let me use the gym.
- Some people are _____ of using their credit card to buy things on the Internet.
- The police say that the escaped prisoner is dangerous and nobody should _____ him.
- Scientists are trying to _____ a cure for the common cold.
- The view from the top of the mountain is _____!
- There's going to be a _____ of the new system before it is used in all shops.

3 PRONUNCIATION /eə/ and /ɜː/; question words

a Write the words in the correct column.

~~dirty~~ ~~hair~~ learn prefer rarely share
their turn wear were where work

	
hair	dirty

b Write the question words.

- /weə/ where
- /hɜːz/ _____
- /haʊ/ _____
- /huː/ _____
- /waɪ/ _____
- /wɒt/ _____
- /wen/ _____
- /wɪtʃ/ _____

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
badge (<i>noun</i>)	/bædʒ/	
eyebrows (<i>noun</i>)	/'aɪbrəʊz/	
funeral (<i>noun</i>)	/'fjuːnərəl/	
partner (<i>noun</i>)	/'pɑːtnə/	
trust (<i>noun</i>)	/trʌst/	
embarrassing (<i>adj</i>)	/ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/	
chat (<i>verb</i>)	/tʃæt/	
giggle (<i>verb</i>)	/'gɪɡl/	
raise (<i>verb</i>)	/reɪz/	
have a date	/hæv ə deɪt/	

LISTENING

a Listen to two people talking about how they met their partners and mark the statements T (True) or F (False), according to the speaker.

- Blanche was very serious about Internet dating. _____
- Kevin is a biologist. _____
- Kevin lives near the sea. _____
- Blanche and Kevin meet every weekend. _____
- Julian's brother was going out with Rachel's best friend. _____
- Julian and Rachel have known each other for sixteen years. _____
- Their first date ended badly. _____
- Their second date was also with Daniel and Sarah. _____

b Listen again with the tapescript on p.74 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

1 B

Here's something to think about: How come you never see a headline like 'Psychic Wins Lottery'?

Jay Leno, American comedian & television host

Do you believe it?

1 READING

a Read the text. Which topic is not mentioned?

politics relationships business food sport

India

The dream destination for astrology addicts

While in Britain the general belief in astrology is limited to glancing at horoscopes in newspapers and magazines, in India people take their star signs very seriously indeed.

Astrology programmes are shown on many of India's 320 television channels, and at least a dozen stations are devoted entirely to astrology 24 hours a day. Calcutta housewife Lata Banerji always starts her day by turning on the astrology channel, Shristi, to find out what the day holds for her and whether she will have to face any kind of domestic crisis. She also receives information on what food she should eat to avoid illness. 'It gives me the confidence I need to face the day,' she says. 'Americans go to a therapist every week to cope with life. I get my sense of wellbeing from the advice I get from astrologers.'

One of the most famous displays of deep belief in astrology came when the Bollywood actress and former Miss World, Aishwarya Rai, 33, announced her engagement to 31-year-old actor Abhishek Bachchan. Unfortunately, astrologists predicted ill health or an early death for her husband, so Aishwarya attempted to avert disaster by marrying a banana tree first in the hope that the bad luck will affect the tree instead of her new husband. Although this may sound bizarre to us, only a few people in India have been shocked by this behaviour.

Indians seek astrological advice on everything from marriage and having children to when to buy a new car and whether to accept a job offer. Some programmes specialize in medical astrology, with callers asking about health issues, while others provide investment and business advice. Astrology is even important in politics with prime ministers asking their astrologers for a 'promising' date before announcing a general election.

Nowadays it is almost obligatory for Indian parents to have a horoscope drawn up when a baby is born. Two people taking advantage of the boom in business are Kalidas Sriram and Vishi Babu, who have put up their tents

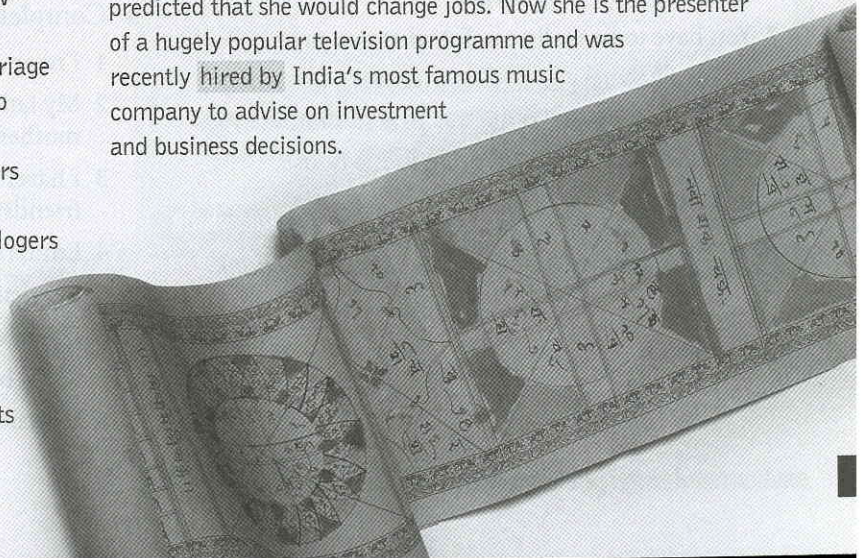
b Read the text again and choose a, b, or c.

- 1 ... radio stations are all about astrology.
 - a 320
 - b 12
 - c 24
- 2 Lata Banerji watches an astrology channel
 - a to help her in her daily life.
 - b because she is very worried about getting ill.
 - c because she can't afford a therapist.
- 3 The actress Aishwarya Rai married a tree
 - a because she's very eccentric.
 - b because she wanted to protect her husband.
 - c because her husband has a serious illness.
- 4 According to the text, Indians ask astrologers
 - a how they should vote in the election.
 - b where they can get a good job.
 - c for advice about many things.
- 5 Sunita Menon works as
 - a an adviser for a well-known company.
 - b a tarot card reader.
 - c the presenter of a music programme.

c Look at the highlighted words and phrases. What do you think they mean? Check with your dictionary.

complete with laptop computer and printer right outside the city's hospital. They either visit the maternity wards or wait outside until new parents leave to offer their services. For the equivalent of €3 they use the baby's time and date of birth to print out a horoscope for the delighted parents.

Many Indians have no doubt that astrology can change people's lives for the better. The glamorous Sunita Menon, India's most famous fortune-teller, was an air hostess until a tarot reader predicted that she would change jobs. Now she is the presenter of a hugely popular television programme and was recently hired by India's most famous music company to advise on investment and business decisions.



2 VOCABULARY personality

a Write a personality adjective to describe each speaker.

1 'Don't panic! Everything is going to be fine.'

calm

2 'I will always be there for you. A friend is for ever.'

3 'I don't like talking to other people about my feelings.'

4 'I'm going to give you some advice because I've seen this happen many times before.'

5 'I don't know why, but I just get angry with everybody all the time!'

6 'He lives alone with ten cats and he always dresses in white.'

7 'I'm always happy to do what everyone else wants to do.'

8 'Even if I'm wrong, I'm not going to apologize.'

9 'I want you to stop seeing your friends so you can spend all your time with me.'

b Complete the sentences with the adjective form of the words in **bold**.

1 My brother is really *ambitious*. He's determined to get to the top. **ambition**

2 My colleague always thinks the worst will happen. She's really **pessimism**.

3 I have no problem leaving my children with Emily. She's very **response**.

4 You never know if you've offended Lauren. He's always so **mood**.

5 Phil is always there when you need him. He's completely **rely**.

6 Tania never remembers her appointments. She's terribly **forget**.

7 You have to be really careful what you say to Susan. She's very **sense**.

8 Rachel is the most **person** I know. She can do or mend anything in the house. **practice**

Study Link Student's Book p.146 Vocabulary Bank

3 PRONUNCIATION word stress

a Write the words in the correct group according to the main stressed syllable.

adventurous arrogant bad-tempered cheerful
easy-going immature impulsive insincere
loyal open-minded original practical

stress on 1st syllable	stress on 2nd syllable	stress on 3rd syllable
<u>stubborn</u>	<u>eccentric</u>	<u>impolite</u>

b Practise saying the words in a.

4 MINI GRAMMAR the...the... + comparatives

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1 The more you worry about it, the worse you'll feel. (worry, bad)

2 The _____ we leave, the _____ we'll get there. (early, soon)

3 The _____ you are, the _____ he'll be. (late, angry)

4 The _____ my English, the _____ I'll speak. (practise, good)

5 The _____ it gets, the _____ it is to sleep. (hot, difficult)

6 The _____ you do, the _____ you'll get. (exercise, fit)

5 GRAMMAR auxiliary verbs

a Complete the sentences using *so...* and *neither...*

1 I'm an optimistic person and so are you.

2 My father works at home and _____ my mother.

3 I haven't tried speed dating and _____ my friends.

4 Emma's coming tonight and _____ Jessica.

5 My sister never wears jeans and _____ I.

6 Harry was late and _____ Damian.

7 You'll be late and _____ I.

8 Marcus hasn't spoken to her and _____ I.

- b Complete the dialogues with a question tag or an auxiliary.



- 1 A Matthew asked you to go with him, didn't he ?
 B Yes he did and I said yes.
 A _____ you? But you told me you _____ like him.
 B Yes I know. I _____ say that, but when I spoke to him at the party I discovered that he's really nice.
 A _____ he? So where are you going on your first date?
- 2 A You didn't close the back door when you went to school, _____?
 B That's not true. I _____ close the back door!
 A You aren't telling the truth, _____?
 B I _____! I can remember closing it.
 A Well, the door isn't closed now, _____?
- 3 A You like classical music, _____?
 B Yes I love it.
 A But you don't like opera much, _____?
 B I _____ like opera, but it's not my favourite. I prefer orchestral music.
 A So _____ I. We could go to a concert together, _____?
- 4 A I'm starving!
 B _____ you? I'm not. I had a very big lunch.
 A So you don't want to go out for dinner, _____?
 B Not especially, but if you _____, I'll come with you.
 A _____ you? That's great. I don't fancy cooking tonight.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
childhood (<i>noun</i>)	/tʃaɪldhʊd/	
handwriting (<i>noun</i>)	/ˈhændraɪtɪŋ/	
initials (<i>noun</i>)	/ɪˈnɪʃlz/	
signature (<i>noun</i>)	/ˈsɪgnətʃə/	
trick (<i>noun</i>)	/trɪk/	
illegible (<i>adj</i>)	/ɪˈledʒəbl/	
psychic (<i>adj</i>)	/ˈsaɪkɪk/	
secretive (<i>adj</i>)	/ˈsiːkrətɪv/	
deduce (<i>verb</i>)	/dɪˈdjuːs/	
sign (<i>verb</i>)	/saɪn/	

LISTENING

- a Listen to a radio programme about superstitions and complete the chart.

Superstition	When or Where?	Why?
Seeing a black cat	Originated in the Middle 1 _____	People thought black cats possessed evil 2 _____
Walking under ladders.	Originated in ancient 3 _____	People thought it broke the 4 _____ of the triangle
Touching wood	Originated in the 5 _____	People knocked on 6 _____ to call the good spirits
Saying 'Bless you'	Originated at the time of the 7 _____	The Pope passed a law obliging people to bless the person who was 8 _____

- b Listen again with the tapescript on p.74 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link Student's Book p.132 Grammar Bank 1B

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

1 C

If you're choking in a restaurant, you can just say the magic words 'Heimlich manoeuvre', and all will be well. Trouble is, it's difficult to say 'Heimlich manoeuvre' when you're choking to death.

Eddie Izzard, English comedian

You're the doctor!

VOCABULARY illness and treatment

Complete the sentences with a word from the list.

bleeding blister burn cough
faint pain rash swollen

- Janet wore her new shoes and now she has a blister on her toe.
- I'm feeling a bit dizzy. I think I'm going to _____.
- If you touch the oven when it's hot, you'll _____ your hand.
- After I took the medicine, I got a _____ all over my body. I must be allergic to it.
- Robin shut his finger in the door and now it's very _____.
- Our office manager has a terrible _____ because he smokes so much.
- I fell asleep in the car and now I've got a _____ in my neck.
- The little boy has cut himself on a piece of glass and his leg is _____.

Complete the dialogues between the patients and the doctor.

- P I've been sick and I've got diarrhoea.
D I think you have food poisoning.
- P It hurts when I talk and I can't eat.
D You've got a s_____ t_____.
- P I've got a temperature and my body aches.
D You probably have f_____.
- P I can't stop sneezing and I've got a cough.
D You've c_____ a c_____.
- P I fell and now my ankle is very swollen.
D I'm afraid you've s_____ your ankle.
- P When I do exercise I have difficulty breathing.
D I think you have a_____.

c Write the words.

- The general word for tablets and liquids you take when you are ill. medicine
- You can take these when you have a headache. _____
- If your doctor isn't sure what's wrong with you, he will send you to see this person. _____
- If you sprain your ankle, the best thing is to put one of these on it. _____
- If you have a problem with your appendix, you will probably need to have one of these. _____
- If you have a deep cut, you will probably need these to close the wound. _____





Study Link Student's Book p.147 Vocabulary Bank

2 PRONUNCIATION consonant and vowel sounds

a Write the words.

- /sni:z/ sneeze
- /'stʌmək eɪk/ _____
- /'swəʊlən/ _____
- /'blʌd preʃə/ _____
- /ʌn'kɒŋʃəs/ _____
- /wu:nd/ _____

b Circle the word with a different sound.

			
pressure	ache	allergic	choke
rash	sick	bandage	temperature
operation	unconscious	drug	X-ray
<u>chest</u>	cough	injection	stitches

c Practise saying the words in a and b.

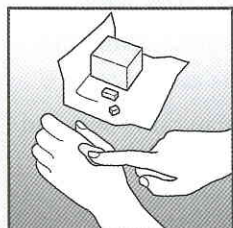
Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

3 READING

- a Read the article quickly. Which of the misconceptions is partly true?

Medical myths

So you think you know a little bit about medicine? Unfortunately, you're probably wrong, according to Dr Keith Hopcroft. Here he explains a number of common misconceptions.



Put butter on a burn

1 You should put your butter back in the fridge and turn on the cold water tap instead. After leaving the burn under the running water for at least ten minutes, you should cover it with a clean wet tea-towel to prevent infection, and seek medical help.



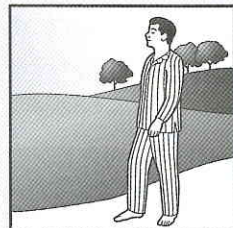
Don't allow a child with a head injury to sleep

This implies that sleep is dangerous for a child who has knocked their head, which is simply not true. 2 The best thing to do in the case of a head injury is to allow the child to go to sleep, but to wake them from time to time to make sure that everything is in order.



You should avoid swimming after a meal

This belief probably exists because of the fear that some food might escape from your stomach if you have just eaten and choke you. 3 Whatever the reason, there is no medical evidence to suggest that people should not swim after eating.



It's dangerous to wake sleepwalkers

No it isn't, although waking them may cause confusion and distress. The safest thing to do is to guide the person gently back to bed and keep an eye them until they have gone back to sleep again. 4

- b Read the article again. Complete it with the missing sentences. There is one sentence you don't need to use.

- A Or perhaps people believe that blood will be diverted from the legs and arms towards the stomach, increasing the risk of cramp in the muscles.
- B This is important because it is also not true that they never injure themselves.
- C This is a bad idea, unless you're planning on changing traditional methods of cooking!
- D However, if they are asleep, you are not able to watch out for serious and increasing tiredness which indicates a complication.
- E If this happens, there is a very real danger that it might block the person's throat and cause death.

4 GRAMMAR present perfect (simple and continuous)

- a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

present perfect simple

present perfect simple: *have / has + past participle (worked, seen, etc.)*

past experiences

Have you ever lost your credit card?

recent past actions

I've cut my finger! He's just arrived at the airport.

with *yet* and *already* (for emphasis)

I've already done the exercise but I haven't read the text yet.

unfinished states (non-action verbs)

They've known each other for 10 years.

- A How long have you been married?
B Since 1996.

- *just* and *already* go before the main verb in [+] sentences, *yet* goes at the end of the phrase in [-] sentences and [?].
- Use *How long...?* + present perfect to ask about an unfinished period of time (from the past until now).
- Use *for* + a period of time e.g. *for two weeks*, or *since* with a point of time, e.g. *since 1990*.
- ! Be careful with *been* and *gone*.
She's gone to London. = she went and is there now;
She's been to London. = she went and has come back

present perfect or past simple?

How long have you been married to Alan?
(= you are married to Alan now)

How long were you married to Jake?
(= you are not married to Jake now)

I've (just) bought a new computer.
(= I don't say exactly when, where, etc.)

I bought it on Saturday.
(= I say when)

- Use the present perfect when there is a connection between the past and the present.
- Use the past simple to ask or talk about finished actions in the past, when the time is mentioned or understood. We often use a past time expression, e.g. *January*, *last week*, etc.

b Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong phrases.

- 1 Nathan hasn't already started his new job.
X hasn't started his new job yet
- 2 How long have your parents been married?
✓
- 3 Their train has arrived ten minutes ago. We're late!

- 4 I can't go out now because I've just washed my hair.

- 5 We've had this computer for last October.

- 6 My brother has travelled all over the world.

- 7 What time have you woken up this morning?

- 8 They only know each other for six months but they're getting married in November.

c New grammar. Complete the e-mail with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect simple or continuous.

Dear Sabine,

Sorry I ¹ haven't written (not write) for ages, but I ² _____ (have) a lot of work recently and I ³ _____ (be) too exhausted to do anything in the evenings once I get home. Today is a bank holiday though, so I ⁴ _____ (write) emails all day to try catch up with all my friends.

Guess what! I ⁵ _____ (move out) of my parent's house! I ⁶ _____ (live) in my new flat for a week now, and I love it! I ⁷ _____ (already / unpack) all my things and it's beginning to feel like home. You must come and visit!

The bad news is that I ⁸ _____ (split up) with Sebastian. He ⁹ _____ (travel) so much recently that we ¹⁰ _____ (not manage) to see each other much and I ¹¹ _____ (meet) someone else. He's called Carl and he's a colleague from work. We ¹² _____ (see) each other since the beginning of the summer. We ¹³ _____ (have) three dates so far and I really like him!

Anyway must go. Please write soon and tell me all your news.
Love
Sophie

Study Link Student's Book p.132 Grammar Bank 1C

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb from File 1.

break call chat cut give

- 1 I'm trying to _____ down the amount of chocolate I eat.
- 2 I tried to learn Russian but it was so difficult that I _____ up.
- 3 I'm sorry. Jane is out. Can you _____ back later?
- 4 The rock band were together for ten years before they _____ up.
- 5 I was having a quiet coffee when a man came over and tried to _____ me up.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
cells (noun)	/selz/	
long-term (adj)	/'lɒŋtɜ:m/	
stuck (adj)	/stʌk/	
breathe (verb)	/bri:ð/	
choke (verb)	/tʃəʊk/	
damage (verb)	/'dæmɪdʒ/	
panic (verb)	/'pænik/	
sting (stung, stung) (verb)	/stɪŋ/	
strengthen (verb)	/'streŋθən/	
swallow (verb)	/'swɒləʊ/	

LISTENING

a Listen and match the speakers to the place where they gave or received first aid.

- A the park Speaker _____
- B in the mountains Speaker _____
- C in a conference hall Speaker _____

b Listen again. What was the medical emergency and what treatment did each person receive?

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.74 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

1 THE INTERVIEW

Complete the missing words.

- 1 A Are you going to talk about the actor's private life in your book?
B No, I wouldn't go _____ there. It's all speculation.
- 2 A You've been watching TV all day!
B Yes, I know, but I've got no _____ better to do.
- 3 A Who was at the reunion concert?
B All sorts _____ of people.
- 4 A What's that noise in the garden?
B I've got no idea. Why don't you go and have a look _____?
- 5 A What on earth _____ are you doing?
B I dropped my ring and I think it went under the bed.
- 6 A Why has Sam left home?
B He said he wanted to live his own little _____.

2 IN THE STREET

a Match the phrases 1–4 to their meanings a–d.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 not particularly | a you know |
| 2 pretty minimal | b none at all |
| 3 you can tell | c not really |
| 4 none whatsoever | d quite small |

b Rewrite the sentences using phrases 1–4 above.

- 1 You usually know where a person comes from because of their accent.
_____ where a person comes from because of their accent.
- 2 He asked me if there was any truth in the rumour and I told him none at all.
He asked me if there was any truth in the rumour and _____.
- 3 I don't really want to go out tonight.
I _____ to go out tonight.
- 4 The effect on the economy will be quite small.
The effect on the economy _____.

3 READING

a Read the article and write the best star sign for each job.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 psychologist _____ | 7 astrologer _____ |
| 2 athlete _____ | 8 accountant _____ |
| 3 author _____ | 9 sales person _____ |
| 4 actor _____ | 10 company director _____ |
| 5 diplomat _____ | 11 relationship counsellor _____ |
| 6 singer _____ | 12 teacher _____ |

b Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

You and your star sign

 VIRGO

(23 Aug.–22 Sept.) Virgos have an intellectual and analytical approach to life. Communication is important to them and they love the written word. They have an eye for detail and are good at observing the world around them.

 LIBRA

(23 Sept.–22 Oct.) Librans are smooth talkers and good at promoting peace and harmony. They react well in hostile situations. They are good negotiators and excellent at seeing other people's points of view.

 SCORPIO

(23 Oct.–21 Nov.) Scorpios are inquisitive and probing, fascinated with how things and people work. They take a great interest in understanding human emotions and are always seeking to uncover a hidden truth.

 SAGITTARIUS

(22 Nov.–21 Dec.) Sagittarians tend to be independent and they love travelling. They are good conversationalists and experts at making friends and convincing people to do things.

 CAPRICORN

(22 Dec.–19 Jan.) Capricorns often have a wide knowledge of practical and business affairs. They are careful and methodical in their work. They like money, although they do not always like spending it.

 AQUARIUS

(20 Jan.–18 Feb.) Aquarians are generally unpredictable, determined, and stubborn. They often adopt unusual lifestyles and ideas. They are sometimes 'visionaries' who can 'see' into the future.

 PISCES

(19 Feb.–20 March) Piscean people tend to be idealistic, sensitive, and responsive to the thoughts and feelings of others. They appreciate art and poetry and may have well developed dramatic abilities.

 ARIES

(21 March–19 April) Arians have a tremendous psychological drive to prove themselves to be the best at all costs. They have great physical energy and enjoy competition. They have a tendency to be impulsive.

 TAURUS

(20 April–20 May) Taureans find it difficult to rely on others, but they are very dependable themselves. They are physically strong and tend to have powerful voices.

 GEMINI

(21 May–20 June) Geminis enjoy communicating and they feel a need to express ideas and share information with others. They love coming into contact with a variety of people.

 CANCER

(21 June–22 July) Cancerians react emotionally to everything they experience in life and they tend to avoid confrontation. They are very good listeners and good at giving advice.

 LEO

(23 July–22 Aug.) Leo is a creative, sociable, and dramatic sign, which loves to be the centre of a circle of admirers. Leos tend to be very self-confident and are natural leaders. They are often highly successful in positions of authority and power.

National stereotypes: truth or myth?

1 GRAMMAR using adjectives as nouns

a Complete the chart. Add your country if it isn't already in the chart.

Country	Nationality adjective	The people
Spain	Spanish	the Spanish or Spaniards
Thailand		
Poland		or
Japan		
Brazil		
Greece		
Czech Republic		
Turkey		or

b Complete the sentences with the noun form of an adjective from the list.

blind deaf disabled injured old rich unemployed young

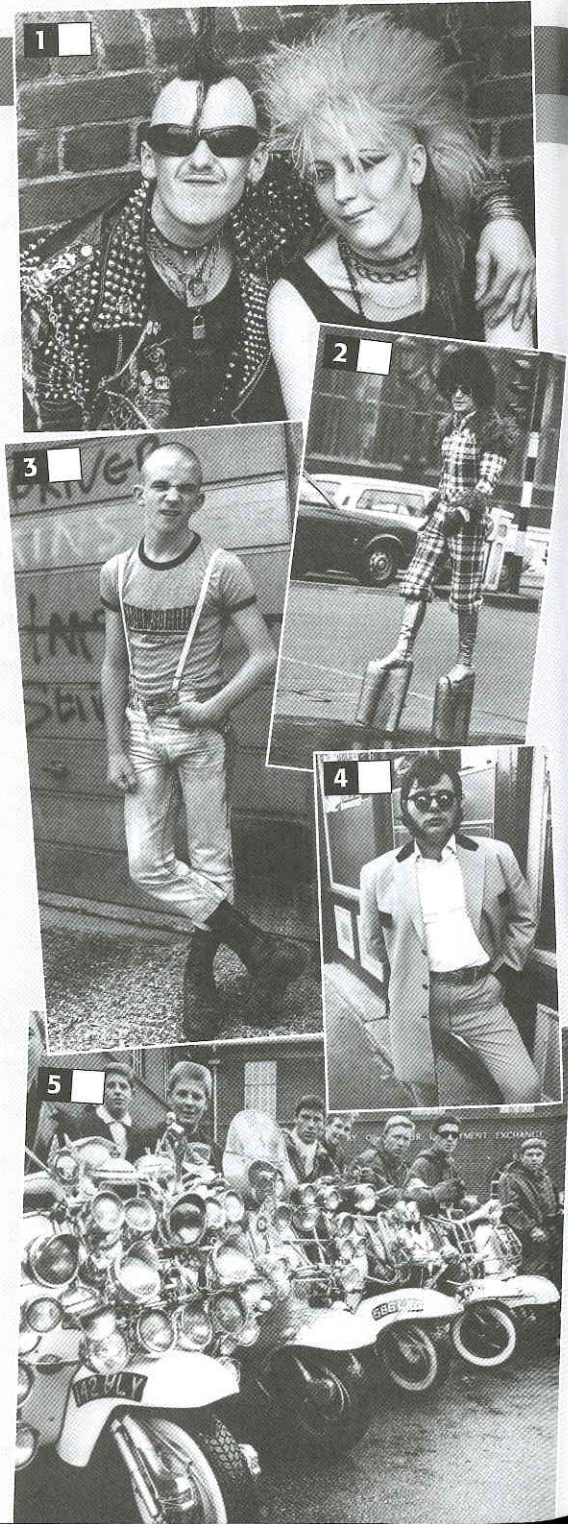
- Should the family or the state look after the old ?
- The government is offering courses to help _____ to find jobs.
- After the accident _____ were taken to hospital.
- The building has easy access for _____ .
- _____ should pay higher taxes than the poor.
- Braille is a special system of reading and writing for _____ .
- _____ always think that they know better than their parents.
- The presenter of the TV programme does sign language so that _____ can follow what's happening.

c Complete the dialogues with *one* or *ones*.

- A What would you like?
B A kilo of ripe bananas please. Not green _____.
- A I'm looking for a T-shirt.
B What kind of T-shirt?
A A white _____.
- A We shouldn't have bought this sofa.
B You're right. The leather _____ was more comfortable.
- A Which of these two pairs of glasses suits me best?
B The round _____ . I don't think the square _____ suit you at all.

2 READING

a Look at the pictures and read the article. Match each picture to a paragraph. There is one picture that is not used.



b Match the highlighted words to the correct definition.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 very important | key _____ |
| 2 not interesting or exciting | _____ |
| 3 arranged or done carefully; tidy | _____ |
| 4 something you wear to hold your trousers up | _____ |
| 5 horrified | _____ |
| 6 with sharp points | _____ |
| 7 made to follow the shape of the body | _____ |
| 8 planned and directed | _____ |
| 9 the end parts of sleeves | _____ |

You're not going out

dressed like THAT!

The older generation is often **appalled** by how younger people choose to dress. But youth fashion cultures have been coming and going for the last fifty years or more. Here's a quick guide to some **key** movements in our fashion history.

A TEDDY BOYS With the birth of rock 'n' roll in the 1950s came the Teds, who rejected the **dull**, functional clothes of their parents' generation. Teddy boys wore knee-length coats, with velvet or satin **cuffs** and collars, and pointed suede shoes. The most distinctive feature of this look was the 'quiff', which was created by combing the hair back and holding it in position with hair cream.

Teddy girls wore circular skirts, white **fitted** shirts, and scarves tied around their necks.

B MODS Emerging in the 1960s, young working-class Mods (originally short for 'Moderns') tended to wear smart Italian-designed suits, polo shirts, and have **neat** haircuts. They rode Vespa motor scooters.

Young Mod women abandoned the traditional ladylike fashions of the 1950s and instead chose tight sweaters and mini-skirts.

C SKINHEADS Skinheads, or 'Skins' appeared in the late 1960s. They had a strict dress code consisting of a shaved head, turned-up jeans, **braces**, and Doctor Marten boots. Skins were strongly influenced by the styles of West Indian immigrants to the UK and listened to ska and reggae music.

D PUNKS In the mid-1970s the punks arrived. For many, Johnny Rotten, lead singer of the The Sex Pistols, personified punk's anarchic and provocative image with his **spiky** hair, black boots, and torn clothes held together with **safety-pins**. Although punks considered themselves anti-fashion, the look was in fact **masterminded** by the band's manager Malcolm McLaren and fashion designer Vivienne Westwood, who ran a clothes shop together on the King's Road in London.

3 VOCABULARY clothes and fashion

a Find nine more materials in the wordsearch.

A	C	O	T	T	O	N	G	H
S	W	E	R	T	Y	Y	B	N
D	V	N	E	N	I	L	G	L
N	E	S	E	S	D	O	J	Y
E	L	I	D	C	V	N	K	C
L	V	L	E	A	T	H	E	R
L	E	K	U	C	V	B	N	A
O	T	M	S	W	E	R	T	Y
O	S	D	M	I	N	E	D	B
W	F	G	H	N	C	K	O	F

b Circle the odd one out.

- 1 sleeveless **scruffy** hooded V-neck
- 2 stylish trendy long-sleeved smart
- 3 silk striped checked spotted
- 4 denim old-fashioned suede fur
- 5 loose long tight plain

c Complete the sentences with a verb from the list.





dress up fit get changed ~~get undressed~~
hang up match suits

- 1 Can you tell the children to get undressed and get into the bath, please?
- 2 The party's going to be quite formal, so I suppose we'd better _____.
- 3 Can you _____ the shirts I've just ironed in your wardrobe, please?
- 4 I think I must have put on a bit of weight. These trousers don't _____ me any more.
- 5 You look great in that new dress! It really _____ you.
- 6 I've been working in the garden, so I'll have to _____ before we go out.
- 7 Ruth bought a red handbag to _____ her red shoes.

Study Link Student's Book p.148
Vocabulary Bank

4 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds

a Circle the word with a different sound.

			
loose hood suit shoes	striped slippers swimsuit linen	stockings cotton short socks	stylish nylon tie suede

b Practise saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

5 GRAMMAR adjective order

Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong phrases.

- Sarah's wearing a denim short skirt.
x a short denim skirt
- I'm looking for a sleeveless pink T-shirt.

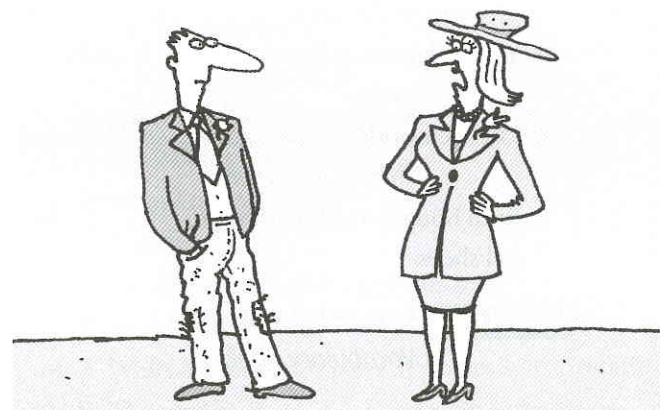
- I want to buy some leather white trousers.

- My sister's bought some purple trendy glasses.

- He gave his mother a patterned silk scarf for her birthday. _____
- She looks very sexy in that black tight Lycra™ T-shirt.

- My boss's wife was wearing a beautiful long red dress.

- You can't wear those old scruffy jeans to the wedding.



Study Link Student's Book p.134 Grammar Bank 2A

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
characteristics (<i>noun</i>)	/kærəktə'rɪstɪks/	
costume (<i>noun</i>)	/'kɒstjʊ:m/	
research (<i>noun</i>)	/rɪ'sɜ:rtʃ/	
stereotype (<i>noun</i>)	/'sterɪətaɪp/	
survey (<i>noun</i>)	/'sɜ:veɪ/	
tribe (<i>noun</i>)	/traɪb/	
neurotic (<i>adj</i>)	/njʊə'rɒtɪk/	
burst out laughing (<i>verb</i>)	/bɜ:st aʊt 'lɑ:fɪŋ/	
take (yourself) seriously (<i>verb</i>)	/teɪk 'sɪəriəsli/	
slightly (<i>adv</i>)	/'slɑ:tli/	

LISTENING

a You're going to hear Irene, a bilingual speaker from Spain, talking about the national stereotype of people from her country. In what three aspects does she think she is a typical Spaniard?

b Listen again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).

- Spanish people vary a lot from region to region. _____
- They are very sociable. _____
- They don't really have a siesta every day. _____
- You can always depend on them. _____
- They tend to judge people by appearances. _____
- They admire other cultures and customs. _____

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.75 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

2 B

I feel about airplanes the way I feel about diets. It seems to me they are wonderful things for other people to go on.

Jean Kerr, American writer

Air travel: the inside story

1 READING

- a Read the text quickly. What two problems does Linate airport have?
- b Read the text again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).
- Wildlife experts are going to try to catch the hares next Sunday. T
 - Hares recently caused two accidents involving tourist charter planes. —
 - Nobody knows why the hare population has suddenly increased in the area. —
 - Linate will close at 8 o'clock on Sunday morning. —
 - The hunters will take the hares to the country and set them free. —
 - Linate is Milan's main airport. —
 - Only low-cost airlines use Linate airport. —
 - The hares are not the only problem Linate airport suffers. —
- c Look at the highlighted words and phrases in the text. What do you think they mean? Check with your dictionary, then use them to complete the sentences.
- Due to a technical fault, our flight is going to be rescheduled for this afternoon.
 - The police are trying to _____ a bank robber who is hiding somewhere in the building.
 - We set off on our journey _____, when the sun was just rising.
 - The plane _____ crashed one minute after taking off. It's a complete mystery.
 - The government needs to take _____ to reduce gun crime in big cities.
 - Firefighters made several _____ to enter the building, but the fire was too strong.
 - The man will _____ from prison after serving only ten years of his sentence.
 - People who drink and drive are _____ the lives of other drivers.



A plague of hares has been causing such chaos at Milan's city airport that authorities have decided to take **drastic measures** to try and catch them. Linate airport will close for three hours on Sunday while 200 wildlife experts go out on the runways to **capture** about 80 hares.

Hares have been invading the runways for months, confusing the ground radar, and **endangering** aircraft landing and taking off, say officials. 'In the last two weeks hares have ended up beneath the wheels of two tourist charter planes,' said Alberto Grancini, the Milan province official in charge of hunting and wildlife. 'They could have caused serious accidents.'

The Milan airports authority said that the hare population at Linate had **inexplicably** increased this year leading to several **attempts** to drive them away from the airport. Unfortunately the hares have refused to leave, so the decision has been made to close the airport altogether to try to capture them.

The operation begins on Saturday, when an area of 4 square kilometres will be fenced off including the runways, hangars, and aircraft parking areas. The hare hunters will move in **at dawn** on Sunday, chasing hares until 8.00 a.m. when Linate will reopen. Twelve flights will have to **be rescheduled** for later in the day. The hares will be taken to protected nature reserves in the Milan area and will **be released**, in the hope that they do not find their way back to the airport.

Linate, which is only 7 km from the centre of Milan, was built in the 1930s, and served as the city's main airport until the modernization of Malpensa, 50 km up the road. Linate is used by charters and low-cost airlines such as easyJet, as well as by national carriers such as Alitalia and British Airways. It is plagued not only by hares but also by frequent fog. ■

2 VOCABULARY air travel

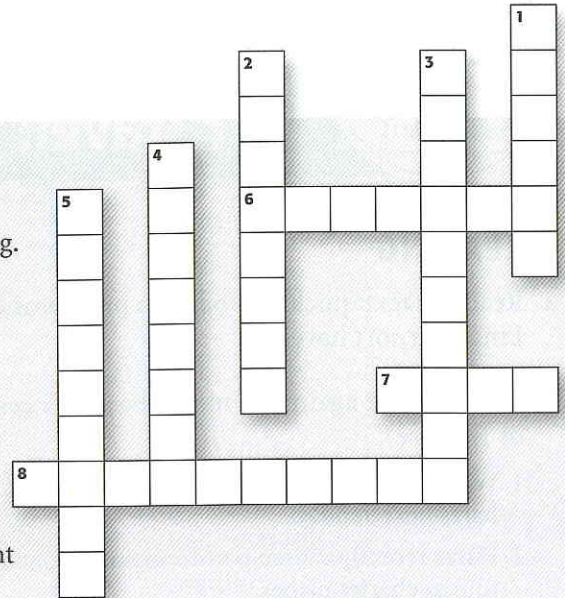
a Complete the crossword.

Clues across →

- 6 When I went to pick up my ..., I found that one bag hadn't arrived.
- 7 The air ... were very efficient when we had to make an emergency landing.
- 8 After the flight landed, the ... had to stay on board the plane for an hour because of a security alert.

Clues down ↓

- 1 It's not always easy to find a ... at airports if you need help with your suitcase.
- 2 Nowadays I always fly with low-cost ... They are much cheaper!
- 3 After we'd checked in, we went through to ... to find the right gate.
- 4 When I got to the airport, I went straight to ... to see if my mother's flight had landed yet.
- 5 I asked a flight ... to bring me an extra pillow.



b Complete the text with suitable words.

The worst journey I ever had was when I flew to New York last year. I arrived at the ¹terminal in plenty of time, but when I got to the ²c_____ desk, there was an enormous queue. By the time it was my turn, there were no window ³s_____ left, so I had to sit in the middle of a row. The man at ⁴p_____ didn't seem to like the photo in my passport, but in the end he let me through, but my scissors were confiscated during the security check. My ⁵f_____ was called as soon as I arrived at the departure lounge, and I had to run to reach the gate in time. I sat next to a small child who screamed loudly when we ⁶t_____, and didn't stop screaming for the next two hours. The weather in New York was terrible when we arrived and I've never experienced such a scary ⁷l_____. I was so relieved when we finally touched the ground. The worst thing was that when I went to baggage reclaim to ⁸p_____ my luggage, I was told that my suitcase had been left behind. I spent my first two days in New York with no clothes!

3 MINI GRAMMAR so / such...that

Circle the correct answer.

- 1 Please don't walk (so) / such fast. I can't keep up!
- 2 I've never seen such / such an awful film in all my life!
- 3 This is the first time we've had a so long / such a long delay at the airport.
- 4 The terminal was so / such crowded that we couldn't find a trolley.

- 5 There was so much / so many snow on the runway that the airport was closed.
- 6 Our neighbours have got such a / such noisy dogs that we have had to complain twice.
- 7 The taxi driver drove so / such slowly that we nearly missed our flight.
- 8 There were so / such a lot of passengers that there wasn't a single empty seat on the plane.

4 GRAMMAR narrative tenses, past perfect continuous

a Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong phrases.

- 1 I was being late for my flight because I had parked in the wrong terminal. ~~x~~ I was late _____
- 2 Had you a good flight? _____
- 3 Someone stole their hand luggage when they waited in the queue. _____
- 4 Where was going Ewan when his car broke down?

- 5 Daisy had already left the airport when she realized she had the wrong suitcase. _____
- 6 Our suitcases were already at baggage reclaim when we were getting there. _____
- 7 We said goodbye to our friends. Then we went through security and passport control into the departure lounge. _____
- 8 He had been flying for twelve hours by the time he reached Australia. _____

b Circle the correct verb form. Sometimes both are possible.

- The crew were exhausted because they had worked / had been working all night.
- Jess was exhausted because she had waited / had been waiting for three hours for her flight to board.
- We weren't hungry during the flight because we had had / had been having a meal earlier in one of the airport restaurants.
- After I had picked up / had been picking up my luggage, I took a taxi to my hotel.
- My mother couldn't move her legs because she had sat / had been sitting down for so long.
- My flight arrived late because it hadn't taken off / hadn't been taking off on time.

c Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

My parents ¹ *had never flown* (never fly) before, and so they were very nervous when we ² _____ (arrive) at Heathrow Airport to take our flight to Benidorm in Spain. I ³ _____ (leave) them at the terminal building with instructions to get in the queue at the check-in desk while I ⁴ _____ (go) to park my car in the long-term car park. However, when I ⁵ _____ (got) to the check-in desk myself, they were nowhere in sight. I ⁶ _____ (look) for them everywhere until it suddenly occurred to me that they ⁷ _____ (already / check in) and they ⁸ _____ (wait) for me in the departure lounge. This was a real problem because I ⁹ _____ (give) all the tickets to my mother, including my own, and so I couldn't check in myself. I immediately ¹⁰ _____ (call) my parents on their mobile. I was right; they ¹¹ _____ (check in) and gone through to the departure lounge. They ¹² _____ (wait) for me for nearly half an hour at the gate with my ticket in their hands! Luckily a flight attendant went and fetched my ticket, and I finally joined them at the departure gate!

Study Link Student's Book p.134 Grammar Bank 2B

5 PRONUNCIATION irregular past forms

a Write the irregular past simple forms.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 /peɪd/ <u>paid</u> | 6 /fluː/ _____ |
| 2 /brɔːt/ _____ | 7 /wʌŋ/ _____ |
| 3 /sed/ _____ | 8 /tɒk/ _____ |
| 4 /rəʊt/ _____ | 9 /tɔːt/ _____ |
| 5 /bɪlt/ _____ | 10 /hɜːd/ _____ |

b Practice saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
cabin (<i>noun</i>)	/'kæbɪn/	
miracle (<i>noun</i>)	/'mɪrəkl̩/	
shortage (<i>noun</i>)	/'ʃɔːtɪdʒ/	
swan (<i>noun</i>)	/swɒn/	
turbulence (<i>noun</i>)	/'tɜːbjələns/	
wheelchair (<i>noun</i>)	/'wiːltʃeə/	
cling (clung) (<i>verb</i>)	/klɪŋ/	
scream (<i>verb</i>)	/skriːm/	
stagger (<i>verb</i>)	/'stæɡə/	
be about to	/biː əbaʊt tə/	

LISTENING

a Listen to a radio programme about the pilot Amelia Earhart. What was she famous for and what happened to her in the end?

b Listen again and mark the statements T (True) or F (False), according to the speaker.

- Amelia was excited when she first saw a plane. _____
- An experience at a flying exhibition made her want to fly. _____
- Amelia's father gave her the money for her flying lessons. _____
- She was taught to fly by a woman. _____
- She named her first plane after a bird. _____
- It took Amelia less than two years to get her pilot's licence. _____
- Amelia's first flight across the Atlantic was as a passenger. _____
- Her second attempt to fly around the world was in 1947. _____
- Amelia and her co-pilot nearly completed their round-the-world trip. _____

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.75 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Incredibly short stories

1 GRAMMAR adverbs and adverbial phrases

a Complete the sentences with adverbs made from the adjectives in the list.

bad careful correct hard fast
brilliant happy safe extreme

- 1 Jack won the tennis final because he played brilliantly.
- 2 My brother had an accident because he was driving too _____.
- 3 You'll have to think very _____ before you decide whether to accept the job.
- 4 I speak French very _____. No one can understand me.
- 5 Who can spell this word _____?
- 6 Although the weather was awful, the plane landed _____.
- 7 His parents have been _____ married for nearly forty years.
- 8 She works _____ and she's very ambitious as well.

b Order the words to make sentences. Put the adverb in its usual position.



- 1 tall / son / incredibly / has / Your / grown
Your son has grown incredibly tall

2 ill / hardly / daughter / is / My / ever

3 parents / next / are / His / retiring / year

4 boy / rude / teacher / was / to / The / extremely / his

5 we / umbrella / an / had / Luckily / taken

6 at / police / immediately / bank / arrived / The / the

7 is / James / apparently / divorced / getting

8 eats / My / unhealthily / very / brother

c Put the adverbs / adverbial phrases in the correct place in each sentence.

usually immediately

1 He ~~gets up~~ / when his alarm clock rings.
(usually / immediately)

2 Although she likes reading, she goes to the library.
(a lot / hardly ever)

3 I crashed my new car. (unfortunately / last week)

4 We should leave tomorrow. (ideally / early)

5 I can understand when people speak English.
(hardly / quickly)

6 My brother forgot his girlfriend's birthday.
(nearly / yesterday)

7 He eats fruit. (surprisingly / never)

8 It didn't rain at the weekend. (luckily / very much)

2 VOCABULARY confusing adverbs and adverbial phrases

Circle the correct answer.

- 1 My father worked very hard / hardly all his life.
- 2 I haven't seen Harry late / lately. Have you?
- 3 I can't stand most TV programmes, specially / especially reality shows.
- 4 Dave near / nearly broke his leg skiing in the Alps.
- 5 Please don't tell me what happens because I haven't read the book still / yet.
- 6 I'm not going to Sam's party. I hard / hardly know him! He's your friend, not mine.
- 7 Do you ever / even wear jeans to work?
- 8 A Do your parents live near / nearly here?
B No, they live about 30 miles away.
- 9 Ellie ate all her lunch, ever / even the vegetables!
- 10 Alan's feet are so big that his shoes are especially / specially made for him.
- 11 My cousin is a doctor and at the moment / actually she's working in Africa.
- 12 We all cried at the end / in the end of the film when the main character died.

3 PRONUNCIATION word stress

a Write the adverbs in the correct column.

absolutely	accidentally	apparently	definitely
eventually	fortunately	immediately	insecurely
obviously	successfully	incredibly	surprisingly

stress on 1st syllable	stress on 2nd syllable	stress on 3rd syllable
		<i>absolutely</i>

b Now practise saying the words in a.

4 READING

- a Read the article about different writers and their writing styles. How many of them:
- a write by hand?
 - b write only in the morning?
 - c write in bed?

How do writers write?

All writers have their own particular ways of getting words down – a favourite pen, a special place, even a certain time of day. Five famous writers reveal their secrets.

A Fay Weldon

BRITISH NOVELIST AND SHORT STORY WRITER

I try to get up early, at about half past six. If you can get two and a half hours' work done before the proper day starts, then you are lucky. I wrote by pen until about four years ago when I realized that the rest of the world used computers. I have regretted the change, because I've noticed the muscles in my hand have changed. Although I have a brand new laptop, I still prefer to use my old PC.



B Michael Morpurgo

BRITISH CHILDREN'S BOOK WRITER

I had problems some years ago sitting at a desk, because I got pains in my wrist and shoulder, so I decided to copy my writing hero Robert Louis Stevenson instead and found his way worked. Now, when I have a story in my head I go to bed with a small notebook, like the one children are given in primary school, and fill it up. I keep my manuscripts in the fridge just in case the house burns down.



C John Mortimer

BRITISH LAWYER, DRAMATIST AND NOVELIST

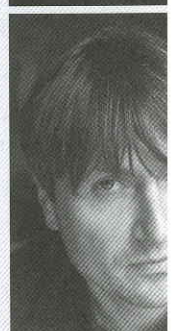
I live in the house my father built, and I write in a room that used to be the garage. Now it's converted and full of books and photographs. I write with a rather soft red pen on the type of notebook lawyers use. Each page is almost exactly 300 words long. I get up at seven or eight and then I write until lunchtime. I don't write after lunch.



D Simon Armitage

BRITISH POET AND NOVELIST

I used to be more nocturnal, but since my daughter was born I try to keep more traditional hours. I have an office just outside the house above the garage where I keep my books and my treasures. I listen to music when I'm writing prose or dialogue and I take my poems around with me. I have no affection whatsoever for my computer, although when it's working we are great friends.



E Marina Lewycka

UKRAINIAN NOVELIST WHO GREW UP IN THE UK

I write in bed, partly because it's the most comfortable and private place and partly because I like to write either at the beginning or the end of the day. It's to do with the business of being in a separate world; once you engage in the real world, everything in your head disappears. I drink an enormous amount of tea and I work on a laptop propped up on my knees.



Read the article again and match each writer (A–E) to a sentence.

Who...

- 1 changed their writing habits to fit in with their family? D
- 2 changed their writing habits but has new problems as a result? —
- 3 worries about losing their work? —
- 4 finds they can concentrate better when they are in bed? —
- 5 writes more or less the same amount every day —

Find a word or phrase in each paragraph which means:

- 1 a portable computer (A) _____
- 2 the part of your body where your arm joins your hand (B) _____
- 3 changed (into another thing) (C) _____
- 4 active at night (D) _____
- 5 take part in (E) _____

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the phrasal verbs from File 2 with the correct particle.

back behind down out up

- 1 When you've finished watching the DVD please put it _____ in its case.
- 2 When I saw the look on his face I burst _____ laughing.
- 3 They've knocked _____ the old houses in order to build some new flats.
- 4 Don't walk so fast! You're leaving me _____.
- 5 It isn't very warm in here. Can you turn _____ the central heating?

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
button (noun)	/'bʌtən/	
housekeeper (noun)	/'haʊski:pə/	
poodle (noun)	/pu:dl/	
frantic (adj)	/'fræntɪk/	
beg (verb)	/bæg/	
bounce (verb)	/baʊns/	
tear (tore, tore) (verb)	/teə/	
trip over (verb)	/trɪp 'əʊvə/	
wrap (up) (verb)	/ræp ʌp/	
hopeless at	/'həʊpləs æt/	

LISTENING

a Listen to four people talking about their favourite books. Match the titles to sentences 1–3.

- Which book...
- 1 gives you information you about a place? _____
 - 2 tells the story of a servant? _____
 - 3 only gives one person's side of a story? _____

- A *We need to talk about Kevin*
- B *Girl with a Pearl Earring*
- C *The Poisonwood Bible*

b Listen again and mark the statements T (True) or F (False), according to the speaker.

- 1 Kate doesn't tell us what the boy did in *We need to talk about Kevin*. _____
- 2 Kate didn't expect the book to end as it did. _____
- 3 The main characters of *The Poisonwood Bible* are an African family. _____
- 4 The book is written from different people's points of view. _____
- 5 *Girl with a Pearl Earring* is about the life of Rembrandt. _____
- 6 Janet preferred the film to the book. _____

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.75 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

1 THE INTERVIEW

Circle the correct option.

- 1 A Can we go out for five minutes, please?
B No. Sit down and put/get on with your work!
- 2 A Do you want to sit down?
B Yes, please. Otherwise/ Anyway I think I might faint.
- 3 A How do you deal/treat with difficult passengers?
B Just by talking to them really.
- 4 A Why do you always give that beggar money?
B He's always standing there and I feel pity/sorry for him.
- 5 A What sort of person are you looking for?
B Well, the ideal candidate will be a team/group player.
- 6 A You're very fond of your car, aren't you?
B Yes, I am. I wouldn't change it for the planet/world.

2 IN THE STREET

Replace one word in each sentence with a word from the list.

actually major money-wise ~~one-time~~

- 1 A friend of mine hates flying. ~~One~~ she refused to get on the plane, so it took off without her. *One time*
- 2 I fly a lot and I've never had a serious problem.
- 3 Financially my job is great, but I do work long hours.
- 4 I wasn't looking forward to a 24-hour flight, but in fact I quite enjoyed it.

3 READING

- a Read the article and find three advantages of working for easyJet as a flight attendant.
- b Read the article again and choose a, b, c, or d.
 - 1 Applicants for the post of flight attendant should
 - a apply directly to their nearest airport.
 - b complete the online application form.
 - c wait until there is a vacancy.
 - d call the company as soon as possible.
 - 2 Applicants have a personal interview
 - a if they pass the maths test.
 - b if they can speak English fluently.
 - c if they do well in all the activities on the first day.
 - d if their abilities are suitable for the job.
 - 3 Before the four-week training course applicants have to
 - a pass all of the exams.
 - b study safety procedures.
 - c prove they are healthy.
 - d practise first aid.

- 4 easyJet staff can give an opinion about something
 - a if they have a permanent contract.
 - b if they are not satisfied with their job.
 - c if they are part of a team.
 - d at any time.

- 5 Applicants for the post of flight attendant must
 - a be over 21.
 - b be English.
 - c live reasonably near their chosen airport.
 - d have a year's work experience.

- c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

Become a flight attendant – the **easy** way!

Application for a job as a flight attendant with easyJet is via our website. Applicants apply for the base of their choice, and staff are recruited as vacancies occur. Applications are held for a maximum of six months on the database; after this time the information is deleted and applicants need to reapply.

Successful applicants are invited to an assessment day, where they complete ability tests in maths and English and take part in group exercises to test how they interact in a team. Those who perform well in the ability tests and the group exercises are asked to return for a personal interview the next day, where they are required to give examples of the skills easyJet is looking for from their previous work history.

Applicants who pass the interview stage are then offered a contract dependent on receipt of satisfactory references for their whereabouts during the previous five years, completion of a medical exam, and a criminal record check. The first four weeks of the contract are spent training at easyJet's training centre at London Luton Airport. Training starts on a Tuesday and days off are given during the week. All trainees without residence in Luton are given shared hotel accommodation for each week of the training course. The subjects studied during the training course are Safety Procedures, First aid, Aviation security, Customer Service, and Cabin Service. To graduate from the course cabin crew have to sit exams and achieve at least 90% in all subjects.

easyJet places great importance on the high standard of its cabin staff and so it rewards its crew with permanent contracts and a competitive salary to ensure job satisfaction. Employees also receive excellent travel packages and are encouraged to give feedback to the company whenever necessary. There is a definite team spirit and employees feel part of the family from day one.

Minimum requirements for easyJet cabin crew are:

- Age 18+
- Height 1.58m to 1.90m
- Fluent in English, both spoken and written
- Able to swim 25m
- A minimum of six months' face-to-face customer service experience
- No visible tattoos or body piercing which cannot be covered discreetly
- Able to arrive at your chosen base within 90 minutes
- A verifiable five-year history



The one place a burglar won't look

1 VOCABULARY crime and punishment

a Order the letters to make crime words.

- gbrual _____
- jkihreca _____
- esumlgg _____
- mtriserero _____
- lsivdnaam _____
- rudaf _____
- bbrriey _____
- drmeeur _____

b Complete the chart.

Crime	Criminal	Verb
<i>kidnapping</i>		
	<i>blackmailer</i>	
		<i>to sell drugs</i>
<i>mugging</i>		
	<i>rapist</i>	
		<i>to steal</i>
<i>robbery</i>		

c Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from a or b.

- A burglar broke into my house while I was away and stole my laptop.
- Fortunately there were no customers in the bank when the _____ happened.
- The _____ of the plane demanded the release of 20 prisoners and \$500,000 in cash.
- They were trying to _____ electronic goods into the country, but they were caught at customs.
- The Mayor accepted a _____ in exchange for allowing the company to build on that land.
- Two men _____ my friend at knifepoint yesterday. They took all her money.
- The accountant was accused of _____ when the accounts were found to be incorrect.
- The _____ took the child while she was playing outside her house.

d Circle the correct word.

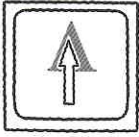


- It took the jury two weeks to reach their **punishment** / **verdict** of 'Not guilty'.
- A man has been **caught** / **arrested** in connection with the robbery at the bank yesterday.
- The victim's husband has been **charged** / **committed** with the murder of his wife.
- The criminal will appear in **court** / **trial** next week.
- Police are **investigating** / **questioning** the kidnapping of a millionaire's son in Los Angeles.
- The judge **acquitted** / **sentenced** the accused man because there was no evidence.
- A **jury** / **witness** saw the burglary and reported it to the police.
- People who **do** / **commit** crimes should be punished.




Study Link Student's Book p.149 Vocabulary Bank

2 PRONUNCIATION the letter u

a Which words have the same vowel sound? Complete the chart with the words from the list.

accuse kill court murder ~~smuggling~~ secure

		
punishment	burgle	manslaughter
smuggling		

		
community	jury	guilty

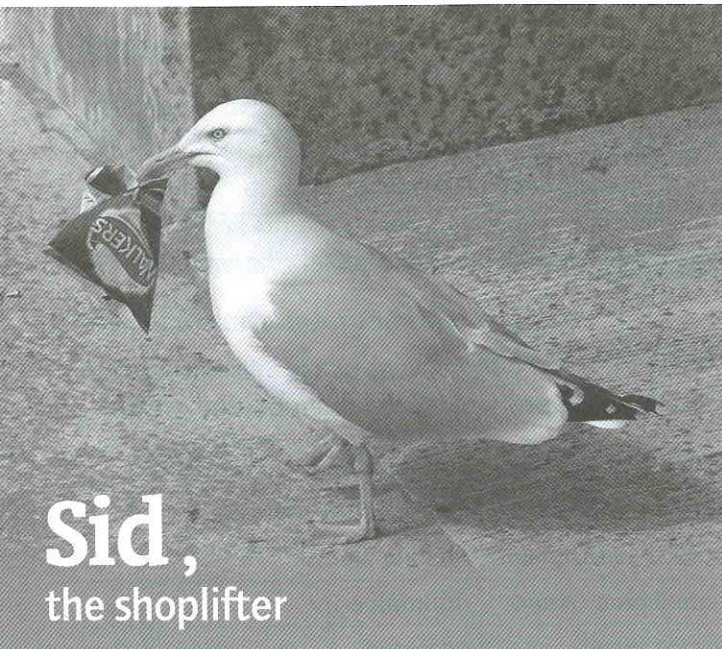
b Practise saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

3 READING

a Read the article quickly and answer the questions.

- 1 Who is Sid the shoplifter?
- 2 What does he usually take?



Sid,
the shoplifter

Sid is a shoplifter, and he always steals the same thing from the same shop in Padstow in Cornwall. ¹ He is a seagull, who has a liking for a particular **brand** of crisps. The bird committed his first crime a few months ago in the local newsagent's. He walked in through the door and **made off with** the crisps before employees could react. ² Shop assistant Jane Draper told us that she didn't believe the seagull had been taking the crisps until she saw it with her own eyes. Apparently the seagull waits until there are no customers in the shop and the door is open. ³ He always takes the same make of crisps from the shelf, goes back outside and **rips** the packet open. Other birds often join him to share in the **feast**.

A **spokesperson** from the local wildlife park said that he had never heard of birds shoplifting before. ⁴ When he saw the packet in the shop, the seagull must have **taken advantage of** the situation to go inside and steal it.

Sid was given his name by the people in the area, who have become very **fond of him**. ⁵ Seagulls are not usually very popular with people, as they can make a lot of mess, but Jane says that Sid is different because he's so unusual.

b Read the article again and complete it with the missing sentences.

- A When Jane is out of sight behind the till the seagull walks in and raids the shop.
- B But Sid is no ordinary thief.
- C He suggested that perhaps the seagull had first tried the crisps one day in the street.
- D Some of the locals even go into the shop to pay for the crisps.
- E Since then he has become a **regular**, and visits the shop almost daily.

c Match the **highlighted** words to the correct definition.

- 1 left in a hurry (after stealing something)
made off with
- 2 a person who is chosen to speak for an organization

- 3 a large special meal _____
- 4 a person who goes to a particular shop very often

- 5 made good (and sometimes unfair) use of

- 6 tears quickly or suddenly _____
- 7 liking a person or thing _____
- 8 the name of a product made by a particular company

4 GRAMMAR passive (all forms), *it is said that...*, *he is thought to...*, etc

a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

■ the passive: *be* + past participle

A lot of films **are shot** on location.
My car **is being repaired** today.
Death in Venice **was directed by** Visconti.
She died when the film **was being made**.
My bike **has been stolen**.
You'll **be picked up** at the airport.
This bill **has to be paid** tomorrow.

- We often use the passive when it's not clear or important who does an action, e.g.

My bike has been stolen
(= Somebody stole my bike. I don't know who.)

- If you want to say who did the action, use *by*.
- You can often say things in two ways, in the active or in the passive.

- b Complete the text with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

As a police officer, I was very upset when my motorbike ¹ was taken (take) from outside my house last month. When I found out that over 20 motorbikes ² _____ (steal) in my area in the previous six months, I promised myself that the thief would ³ _____ (catch) and punished. All the victims of the thefts ⁴ _____ (question) and all the motorbike dealers in the area ⁵ _____ (visit) by myself and my colleagues. Our investigations came to an end late last night when we identified the criminal... as my next-door neighbour!

He ⁶ _____ (just arrest) and at the moment he ⁷ _____ (hold) at the local police station. His case ⁸ _____ (hear) in the Magistrate's Court next week and we all expect him to be found guilty. He might ⁹ _____ (give) a short prison sentence, but the best thing is that no more motorbikes ¹⁰ _____ (steal) in my area in the near future.



- c New grammar. Rewrite the sentences.

- 1 It is said that the smugglers have made the journey several times.

The smugglers are said to have made the journey several times.

- 2 People think that the mugger carries a selection of different knives.

It is thought that the mugger carries a selection of different knives.

- 3 They know that the rapist is a local man.

The rapist _____.

- 4 The blackmailer is understood to be a colleague of the victim.

It is _____.

- 5 It is reported that the president's wife has been kidnapped.

The president's wife _____.

- 6 People expect the man to be acquitted.

The man _____.

- 7 They say the police are investigating the theft of a painting by Picasso.

It is _____.

- 8 The terrorists are thought to be in hiding somewhere in France.

It is _____.

- 9 It is reported that an art gallery has been damaged by vandals.

An art gallery _____.

- 10 The suspect is known to be dangerous.

It is _____.

Study Link Student's Book p.136 Grammar Bank 3A

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
antiques (<i>noun</i>)	/æ'n'ti:kz/	
burglar alarm (<i>noun</i>)	/'bɜ:glə ə'lɑ:m/	
humiliation (<i>noun</i>)	/'hju:mili'eɪʃn/	
justice (<i>noun</i>)	/'dʒʌstɪs/	
kitten (<i>noun</i>)	/'kɪtən/	
magician (<i>noun</i>)	/mə'dʒɪʃn/	
victim (<i>noun</i>)	/'vɪktɪm/	
tough (<i>adj</i>)	/tʌf/	
interrogate (<i>verb</i>)	/ɪn'terəgeɪt/	
in a trance	/ɪn ə træns/	

LISTENING

- a Listen to three people talking about different crimes and write speaker 1-3 next to each sentence.

- A The crime was partly the victim's own fault. _____
- B The victim was hurt during the incident. _____
- C The victim didn't lose much because he / she had learnt to take precautions. _____
- D The victim refused to give the thief what he wanted. _____
- E He / She recovered one of the stolen belongings. _____
- F He / She has been a victim of the same crime more than once. _____

- b Listen again with the tapescript on p.75 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

Only when the last tree has died, and the last river has been polluted and the last fish has been caught, will we realize that we can't eat money.

Cree Indian saying

1 READING

a Read the article and decide what it is mainly about.

- A The impact of cheap flights on the environment.
- B How budget airlines are helping to save the planet.
- C The ways in which airlines can cut their costs.

b Read the article again and choose a, b, or c.

- 1 Environmental groups want governments
 - a to close low-cost airlines.
 - b to reduce air travel.
 - c to increase air fares.
- 2 Aircraft emissions will be the main source of greenhouse gases
 - a by 2020.
 - b by 2030.
 - c by 2050.

- 3 Airlines will have to buy permits
 - a to pay for the fuel they use.
 - b to be able to enter a European airport.
 - c to compensate for the dangerous gases their aircraft emit.
 - 4 In the opinion of the representative from British Airways
 - a the estimate of aircraft emissions for 2050 is exaggerated.
 - b people should be allowed to choose how to reduce emissions of carbon dioxide.
 - c road transport is a greater source of CO₂ emissions than air transport.
 - 5 The European Parliament wants to introduce a scheme to cover
 - a all flights using an airport in an EU country.
 - b all international flights worldwide.
 - c only flights from one European country to another.
- c Look at the highlighted words or phrases. What do you think they mean? Check with your dictionary.

CLOUDS ON THE HORIZON

Who isn't tempted by adverts for cheap flights by low-cost airlines? It seems like the ideal solution to broaden your horizons and go out to see something of the world. But now governments are becoming increasingly concerned about the impact of air travel on the environment, and politicians are under pressure from environmental groups to stop the growth in low-cost flights.

Air travel is the fastest-growing source of greenhouse gases, and flights are on course to double by 2020 and triple by 2030. Emissions from aircraft, principally carbon dioxide, nitrogen oxides, and water vapour, contribute in part to the effect of global warming. If aviation continues expanding at the same rate as it has done in previous years, it will become the main source of CO₂ emissions by the middle of the century.

Plans to halt the increase in air travel include introducing a tax on jet fuel, selling permits to airlines to cover their output of carbon dioxide, and stopping the expansion of existing airports. Airline companies will be forced to put up their prices to cover these costs, making air travel much more expensive for passengers. It looks like the days of a cheap weekend break in Venice could be over.

In response to these proposals, airlines insist that the impact of aviation on the environment is not sufficiently understood to justify introducing such drastic measures. A representative from the environmental affairs department of British Airways admitted that



air travel could account for nearly half of the total CO₂ emissions by 2050, but alleged that the proposals would limit society's choice on how the gases should be reduced. He said that society might prefer to continue to allow flights to grow and reduce emissions elsewhere, such as in power generators or road transport.

The European Parliament is at present debating the environmental impact of air travel, and politicians are drawing up plans for a scheme to cover all flights arriving at or departing from all airports in the European Union. However, the scheme is likely to be limited in the early years to flights within Europe in order to avoid legal challenges from the United States and other countries.

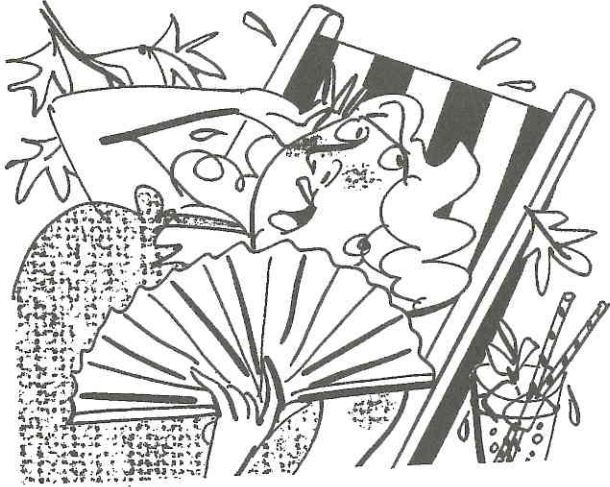
As the years go by it is becoming clear that it is not only governments who will be paying the price of reducing global warming. In the future individuals will be encouraged to either stay at home or contribute to the bill.

VOCABULARY weather

Circle the odd one out.

- 1 below zero scorching chilly freezing
- 2 mild showers pouring drizzling
- 3 warm boiling scorching damp
- 4 gale force cool breeze wind
- 5 mist fog smog lightning
- 6 blizzard hurricane hot flood

Complete the sentences with a suitable word.



- 1 We're having a heatwave. It's not usually so hot at this time of year.
- 2 If you're travelling in India, it's best to avoid the m_____ season.
- 3 It rained so hard that there were serious f_____ in low-lying areas.
- 4 The h_____ was completely unexpected and the balls of ice nearly broke our greenhouse!
- 5 Hundreds of trees fell down during the h_____ and several houses were destroyed.
- 6 The government is encouraging everyone to save water because of the d_____.





Match each adjective to a noun.

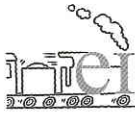

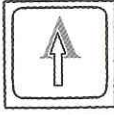

- 1 strong
 - 2 low
 - 3 clear
 - 4 dry
 - 5 heavy
 - 6 thick
 - 7 icy
 - 8 bright
- a skies
 - b periods
 - c rain
 - d fog
 - e temperatures
 - f sunshine
 - g roads
 - h winds

PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds

Which words have the same vowel sound? Complete the chart with the words from the list.

drizzling drought gale heatwave
below zero hurricane lightning pouring

			
chilly	breeze	showers	scorching
drizzling			

			
hailstorm	soaked	flood	bright

Practise saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

GRAMMAR future perfect and future continuous

Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

future forms

be going to + infinitive
future plans and intentions

My sister's **going to** adopt a child.
Are you **going to** buy a new car?
I'm **not going to** go to New York next week.

predictions

I think they're **going to** win. (They're playing very well.)
It's **going to** rain. (The sky is very dark.)

- Use *going to* NOT *will* / *won't* when you have already decided to do something.
- With the verb *go* you can leave out the infinitive.
I'm not going (to go) to New York.

present continuous be + verb + -ing
future arrangements

We're **getting** married in October.
They're **meeting** at 10.00.
She's **leaving** on Friday.

- You can usually use present continuous or *going to* for future plans / arrangements.
– *going to* shows that you have made a decision.
We're going to get married in the summer.

Study Link Student's Book p.150 Vocabulary Bank

- Present continuous emphasizes that you have made the arrangements.
We're getting married on July 12th. (i.e. we've booked the church)

will / shall + infinitive

I'll have the steak.	(instant decision)
I won't tell anybody where you are.	(promise)
I'll carry that bag for you.	(offer)
Shall I help you with your homework?	(offer)
Shall we eat out tonight?	(suggestion)
You'll love the film!	(prediction)

- Use *will / won't* (NOT the present simple) for instant decisions, promises, offers, and suggestions.
- Use *shall* (NOT *will*) with *I* and *we* for offers and suggestions when they are questions.
- Use *will* or *going to* for predictions.

b Circle the correct form(s).

- If this hot weather continues, forecasters say we're going to have / we will have / we're having a drought.
- I've decided that in the future I'm going to take / I'll take / I take the train instead of my car to the office.
- Keith is having / will have / is going to have a video conference with the Managing Director later on today.
- A I don't know how to download this document.
B I'll help / I'm going to help / I'm helping you.
- Anna has decided she's going to leave / she will leave / she's leaving her job to go back to college.
- We're going to go / will go / are going away next weekend. We've booked a country cottage for two nights.

c New grammar. Complete the sentences with the future perfect or future continuous form of the verb in brackets.

- By the end of this month, we'll have moved (move) to our new house so you can come and stay after that.
- This time tomorrow my parents _____ (fly) over the Atlantic on their way to New York!
- It's been raining all day, but hopefully it _____ (stop) by tomorrow. We were planning to have a picnic.
- Hopefully you _____ (read) the book I lent you by the next time we see each other.
- If the match starts at 7.00 p.m., we _____ (play) until 8.45 at least.
- I can't meet you for lunch tomorrow because I think I _____ (work). I have so much to do I'll just have a sandwich at my desk.
- In a year's time, they _____ (build) the new road and we'll be able to get to work much quicker.
- If everything goes according to plan, we _____ (spend) Christmas in Australia this year.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
canal (<i>noun</i>)	/kə'næl/	
chaos (<i>noun</i>)	/'keɪs/	
climate change (<i>noun</i>)	/'klaɪmət tʃeɪndʒ/	
CO ₂ emissions (<i>noun</i>)	/sɪ: əʊ tu: ɪ'mɪʃnz/	
fan (<i>noun</i>)	/fæn/	
rubbish bin (<i>noun</i>)	/'rʌbɪʃ bɪn/	
sea level (<i>noun</i>)	/'si: levl/	
crazy (<i>adj</i>)	/'kreɪzi/	
organic (food) (<i>adj</i>)	/ɔ:'gæɪnɪk/	
recycle (<i>verb</i>)	/,rɪ:'saɪkl/	

LISTENING

a Listen to a conversation between two people about climate change. Tick ✓ the correct option.

- Paul and Judith are both very worried about climate change.
- Paul is very worried but Judith takes it less seriously.
- Judith is very worried but Paul doesn't take it seriously at all.

b Listen again and decide if the following opinions are expressed by Paul (P) or Judith (J).

Who...

- feels very positive about the unusual weather? _____
- mentions the government's action to reduce the number of flights? _____
- thinks that the government is taking the wrong action to reduce CO₂ emissions? _____
- thinks that individuals can help reduce global warming? _____
- says that everyone should try to save water and energy? _____
- suggests that they could change their usual holiday habits? _____
- admits that their attitude may be wrong? _____

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.76 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

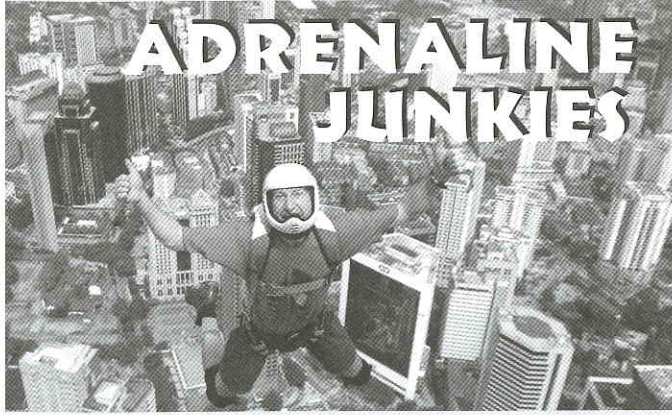
Study Link MultiROM

I believe that one of life's greatest risks is never daring to risk.

Oprah Winfrey, American TV personality

READING

Read the article and number the paragraphs in the correct order.



A You might think that the whole point of an extreme sport is that is dangerous. While this is important, however, it isn't only danger that these sportspeople are seeking. They also find these sports incredibly exhilarating – and in fact it's this element – the combination of fear and enjoyment – that provides the real thrill. In the case of an extreme sportsperson, fear becomes pleasure.

B In today's world, where predators and natural dangers seldom exist, this response can eventually cause stress and feelings of anxiety. In addition, any decisions we make in a risky situation can actually be influenced by the effect adrenaline has on the body. For some people adrenaline can have long-term negative effects, but others can actually get addicted to it and the feeling it gives. These people are often referred to as adrenaline addicts' or 'junkies'.

C Adrenaline is the hormone which prepares our bodies to react in times of stress or danger. When a person perceives a situation as dangerous, adrenaline is released into the bloodstream in order to increase blood flow and heart rate. Blood is rapidly supplied to the parts of the body needed most like the legs and the pupils of the eyes. At the same time, the supply is reduced to areas of less importance, like the skin and stomach.

D Evidence of this phenomenon can be found in the ever-growing world of extreme sports. There is now a wide range of sports designed to give these adrenaline junkies the thrill they need. Ever more strange sports are emerging – from the more normal (such as skydiving or snowboarding), to the incredibly dangerous. Examples of these include base jumping when people parachute off buildings or cliffs, ice climbing, and cave diving.

b Read the article again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).

- 1 Adrenaline is a drug injected by extreme sportsmen and women. F
- 2 The effects of adrenaline can vary from person to person. _____
- 3 The adrenaline response is still a necessary part of everyday life. _____
- 4 The success of extreme sports shows that adrenaline addicts exist. _____
- 5 The least important feature of extreme sports is the element of danger involved. _____
- 6 Extreme sportsmen and women enjoy feeling scared. _____

c Match the highlighted words to the correct definition.

- 1 animals that kill and eat other animals predators
- 2 an event in nature that may not be fully understood _____
- 3 appearing from somewhere _____
- 4 one important part of something _____
- 5 the round black hole in the middle of your eye _____
- 6 a sudden strong feeling of excitement _____

2 VOCABULARY expressions with take

Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 My girlfriend is very sensible. She doesn't like taking risks.
- 2 Katie is always campaigning for women's rights. She takes gender equality very seriously.
- 3 I'm looking forward to my holiday so I can take things easy for a change.
- 4 She's the youngest in the family, so nobody ever takes any notice of anything she says.
- 5 My mother takes care of herself and still looks great.
- 6 You don't have to finish this today. There's no hurry. You can take your time.
- 7 When I was little I used to take part in dancing competitions.
- 8 Let's take advantage of the lovely weather and have a picnic.

3 MINI GRAMMAR *likely* and *probably*

Rewrite the sentences with *likely* or *probably*.

- 1 Our team isn't likely to win the match.
Our team *probably won't win the match* _____.
- 2 James will probably be going out this evening.
James *is likely to be going out this evening* _____.
- 3 My boyfriend isn't likely to get the job.
My boyfriend _____.
- 4 We probably won't be here this weekend.
It _____.
- 5 They'll probably be having dinner when we arrive.
They _____.
- 6 There's likely to be a drought if it doesn't rain soon.
There _____.
- 7 Jessica is probably going to fail her driving test.
Jessica _____.
- 8 It isn't very likely that I'll be taking part in the campaign.
I _____.

4 GRAMMAR conditionals and future time clauses

a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

■ first conditional and future time clauses + *when, until, etc.*

first conditional sentences: *if (or unless) + present simple, will / won't + infinitive* .

If you **don't do** more work, you'll **fail** the exam.
He'll **be** late for work **if he doesn't hurry up**.
She won't get into university **unless she gets** good grades.

- Use the present tense (NOT the future) after *if* in first conditional sentences.
- *unless* = if...not
I won't go unless she invites me. = I won't go if she doesn't invite me.
- You can also use an imperative instead of the *will* clause, e.g. *Come and see us next week if you have time.*

future time clauses

As soon as you **get** your exam results, **call** me.
We'll **have** dinner when your father **gets** home.
I **won't go** to bed until you **come** home.
I'll **have** lunch before I **leave**.
After I **finish** university, I'll probably **take** a year off and travel.

- Use the present tense (NOT the future) after *when, as soon as, until, before, and after* to talk about the future.
- as soon as = at the moment when
I'll call you as soon as I arrive.

b Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 If you commit (commit) a crime, you'll be punished.
- 2 If that boy _____ (try) to chat me up again, I'll tell him I'm not interested.
- 3 I _____ (go) and see the doctor tomorrow if I don't feel better.
- 4 You _____ (not lose) weight until you stop eating so much.
- 5 We _____ (call) an ambulance if you think he's broken his leg.
- 6 You'll regret it if you _____ (not take) advantage of this opportunity.
- 7 The jury _____ (not give) their verdict until they all agree.
- 8 If fuel prices go up, low-cost airlines _____ (go) out of business.

c New grammar. Circle the correct answer.

- 1 Don't leave the medicine on the table if / in case the children open it.
- 2 Let's stop the car unless / until it stops pouring with rain.
- 3 You'll have plenty of time to travel when / if your children grow up.
- 4 If / In case there isn't enough evidence, the man will be acquitted.
- 5 Please return to your seats until / as soon as the fasten seatbelt sign is switched on.
- 6 Let's go to the duty free shop before / after our flight leaves.
- 7 I'll get changed to go out until / after I've had dinner.
- 8 You'll get soaked if / unless you go out now.

d Right (✓) or wrong (✗)? Correct the wrong sentences.

- 1 If there will be a blizzard tomorrow, we won't be able to leave the house.
✗ If there is a blizzard tomorrow, we won't be able to leave the house.
- 2 I'm staying in tonight unless my friends call me.
✓
- 3 Don't take the tablets until you will have your lunch.

- 4 I call you as soon as I get to my hotel this evening.

5 Bring your swimsuit in case you'll want to have a swim.

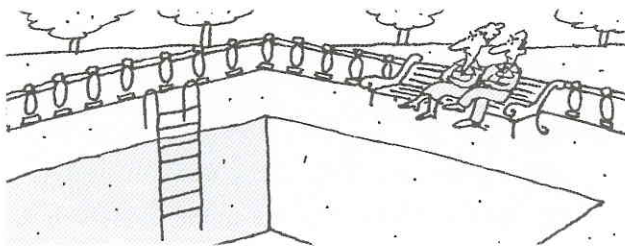
6 I'll have dinner later, after I've finished in the garden.

7 You can't watch TV until you finish your homework.

8 My boyfriend will call me as soon as he will land.

9 Are you getting changed before you will go out?

10 People won't be allowed to fill their swimming pools if the drought continue.



Study Link Student's Book p.136 Grammar Bank 3C

5 PRONUNCIATION sentence rhythm

a Underline the stressed words.

- 1 Please take me seriously.
- 2 They took advantage of me.
- 3 He never takes decisions.
- 4 Don't take any notice of her.
- 5 Take it easy for a few days.
- 6 He didn't take part in the game.

b Practise saying the sentences in a.

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the phrasal verbs from File 3 with the correct particle.

through down out (x2) on

- 1 Just carry _____ with what you're doing and tell me when you've finished.
- 2 Kerry went _____ a really hard time after the divorce.
- 3 Watch _____! There's a car coming.
- 4 The man got _____ of his car and walked into the bank.
- 5 He's been unemployed since the factory closed _____.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
catastrophe (<i>noun</i>)	/kə'tæstrəfi/	
hazard (<i>noun</i>)	/'hæzəd/	
playground (<i>noun</i>)	/'pleɪgraʊnd/	
threat (<i>noun</i>)	/θret/	
drown (<i>verb</i>)	/draʊn/	
scare (<i>verb</i>)	/skeə/	
sue (<i>verb</i>)	/su:/	
according to	/ə'kɔ:dɪŋ tə/	
whereas	/weə'ræz/	
instead (<i>adv</i>)	/ɪn'sted/	

LISTENING

a Listen to part of a radio programme where Andy Evans talks about bungee jumping and complete the sentences. You sometimes have to write more than one word.

- 1 The first bungee jumpers were discovered on the island of Vanuatu, which is in the _____.
- 2 Young men called 'land divers' used to jump off platforms with vines tied to _____.
- 3 In 1979 Chris Baker and four friends jumped off the Clifton Suspension Bridge in the city of _____, using a rope called a 'bungee'.
- 4 Immediately after the team had jumped, they _____ by police.
- 5 However, people carried on doing bungee jumps, especially in _____.
- 6 Many people did jumps from the Golden Gate _____ in San Francisco.
- 7 Some of the jumps were sponsored by _____ television.
- 8 Fatalities sometimes occur when people use a bungee which is _____.
- 9 Calculations and fittings should be _____ checked before each jump.

b Listen again with the tapescript on p.76 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

1 THE INTERVIEW

Complete the mini dialogues with a word from the list.

degree face long spot sudden way

- 1 A Do you want to come jogging with me tomorrow morning?
B Yes, OK, as _____ as it's not too early.
- 2 A Why did you give up athletics?
B All of a _____ I realized I didn't want to do it any more.
- 3 A Those flights are really cheap.
B Yes, on the _____ of it, but when you add on all the extras they're not cheap at all.
- 4 A How did you manage to come down the mountain in the dark?
B Well, James led the _____ with a torch, and the rest of us just followed him.
- 5 A Do you enjoy your job?
B To a _____, but I find it very stressful too.
- 6 A Where do you usually go fishing?
B Well, we've found a nice _____ that's not too far from home.

2 IN THE STREET

Complete the missing words.

- 1 My father always makes a f _____ of himself when he dances.
- 2 I used to enjoy dressing up in my y _____ days.
- 3 Did you see the parachute display? It was _____!
- 4 I've got my driving licence. Does that c _____ as a form of identification?

3 READING

- a Read the article about free running in Thailand. Complete it with the missing sentences.
- A Some people just do it for fitness, and some see it as a sport.
 - B But it never made me want to stop.
 - C Another man nearby leaps from one wall to another over a metre away.
 - D They regard strength and stamina as the main skills necessary together with a knowledge of where your body's centre of gravity is.
 - E There are so many alternative ways to move.
- b Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

Jump Thailand!



The man coming towards us runs lightly along the path before jumping over a bench and landing easily on the other side. ¹ These are two of the members of Thailand's first (and only) active free running collective comprising Anshul, Shayan, Dhruv, Arun, and Gee. The group was founded by Anshul after he had seen free runners on the documentary *Jump Britain* and then again in real life on a visit to the USA.

Anshul's group operates in Bangkok, which, like other cities in the West, has been built up to such an extent that going from A to B has become a challenge. Free running gives people like Anshul the motivation to meet this challenge by travelling around in a different and innovative way. As Anshul says, 'It's like, if you're walking on a sidewalk, anyone can use it, but this is breaking free. ² You can use a wall or anything.'

Free running attracts followers for many different reasons. 'Some people think it's a martial art. ³ Some people want to make it into a competition, while others want to keep it as a philosophy because they don't see why someone's move should be better than someone else's,' explains Anshul.

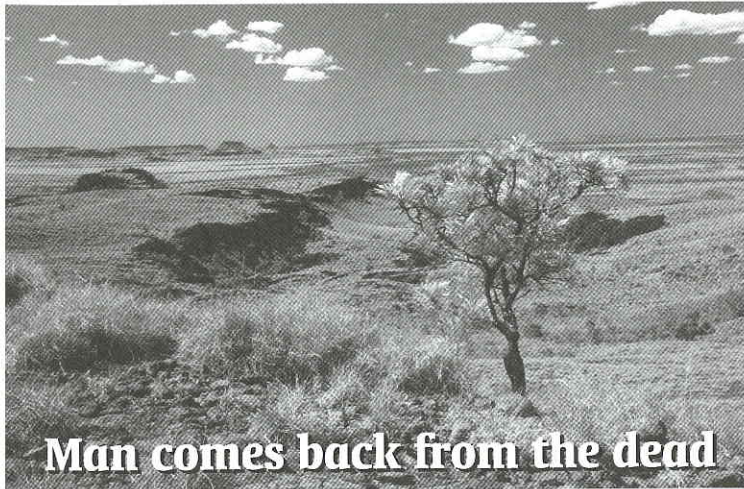
The most important element of free running is safety and, like their western counterparts, Anshul and his friends are careful to teach people the basics first. Injuries are still possible, however, and group member Shayan remembers the effect an ankle injury had on him. 'When I got injured,' he says, 'I couldn't do the same move for three or four months because I had the fear in the back of my head. ⁴

The group's advice to anyone interested in free running is that they should train hard, and do as much research as possible. ⁵ As Shayan warns before going back to his routine, 'You don't want to be standing on a building and fall off.'

Would you get out alive?

1 READING

- a Read the story quickly to find out how Ricky Mcgee survived for three months in the Australian Outback.



Man comes back from the dead

When 35-year-old Australian Ricky Mcgee set off in his car to drive the 4,800 km from Brisbane to Port Hedland to start a new job, he knew the journey would not be short. However, he did not expect to spend three months of his life alone in one of the **harshest** areas of Western Australia before he encountered civilization once more.

According to Mr Mcgee, he stopped when he saw three men on the side of the road and gave one of the men a lift. The last thing he remembers of the journey was driving up the road, feeling a little dizzy and confused. His next memory is waking up face-down in a hole covered with rocks and earth. What woke him was the noise of four wild dogs **scratching** at the rocks to try and get at him.

Mcgee believes that he was drugged and **dumped** by his passengers, and one fact that supports his **claim** is that his car has never been found. After losing his vehicle, Mr Mcgee says he walked for ten days, regularly fainting from heat exhaustion through a region virtually **uninhabited** where temperatures rose daily to over 40°C. Eventually he found a small stream and built a **shelter** of branches there. He says he would go out just before dark and gather snakes, lizards, and frogs to eat.

When he finally did emerge from the bush after 90 days surviving in these conditions, it is hardly surprising that his appearance **scared the life** out of the first person who saw him, cattle-station manager Mark Clifford. Clifford says Mr Mcgee looked like a 'walking **skeleton**' when he saw him, a description which is not far from the truth considering that the 1.9m man weighed in at 45kg, having lost 59kg during his absence.

At first police and hospital staff refused to believe Mr Mcgee's story, but Les Notarus, Medical director of the Royal Darwin hospital, says that his condition fitted perfectly that of a man who had spent weeks in the Outback. Dr Notarus said that Mr Mcgee was very deeply **suntanned** and his body weight was extremely low for such a tall man. His story that he had been driving to Port Hedland to take up the new post has been **verified**, and when he recovers, Mr Mcgee may be interested to hear that the position remains vacant.

- b Read the story again and choose a, b, or c.

1 Ricky Mcgee

- a knew the journey would take some time.
- b planned to take a three-month break.
- c took three months to drive to Port Hedland.

2 Mr Mcgee says he woke up

- a because some animals were trying to rescue him.
- b because some animals were trying to attack him.
- c because he was covered with earth and rocks.

3 Mr Mcgee believes that the men he picked up

- a were well-known thieves.
- b had always planned to murder him.
- c gave him something to make him confused.

4 The person who first saw Mr Mcgee walking out of the bush

- a was pleased to see him.
- b was absolutely terrified.
- c did not believe his story.

5 Mr Mcgee's claim about the new job in Port Hedland is

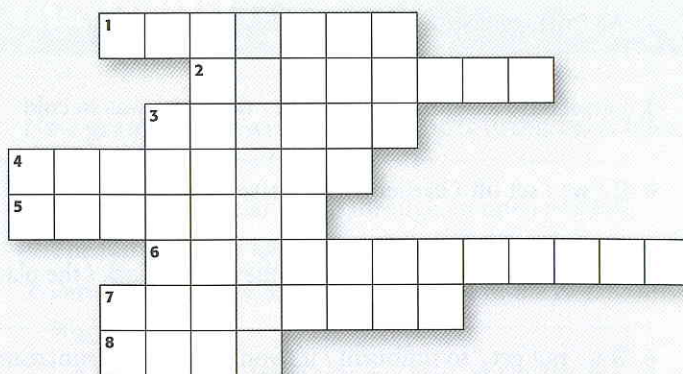
- a a lie.
- b probably true.
- c definitely true.

c Look at the highlighted words and phrases. What do you think they mean? Check with your dictionary.

2 VOCABULARY feelings

a How are these people feeling? Complete the puzzle to discover the hidden feeling.

- 1 She's just heard her boyfriend has had a car accident.
- 2 I'm studying abroad and I'm missing my family.
- 3 Oliver hasn't got any friends.
- 4 It's pouring with rain and my brother has just given me a lift home.
- 5 We've got an exam tomorrow.
- 6 You weren't offered the job after you went for an interview.
- 7 Someone told you your new hairstyle made you look old.
- 8 Your friend tells you she has passed her driving test.



b Replace the underlined words with a suitable adjective from the list.

astonished ~~delighted~~ devastated exhausted
furious stunned terrified thrilled



- 1 Olivia was extremely happy when she won the crossword competition. delighted
- 2 We were incredibly tired so we decided not to go out. _____
- 3 They were extremely scared when they heard the hurricane warning. _____
- 4 The police were very surprised when the murderer went into the police station to give himself up. _____
- 5 She was so surprised she couldn't react when she heard about the terrorist attack. _____
- 6 My brother was really angry when his new car was stolen. _____
- 7 He was extremely upset and shocked when his wife left him. _____
- 8 We are very excited to be going on a world cruise. _____

c Complete the idioms.

- 1 Harriet was scared stiff when she saw a mugger coming towards her.
- 2 The bus company is _____ and tired of replacing buses that have been vandalized.
- 3 My sister was down in the _____ when she lost her job.
- 4 He was _____ out after taking part in the marathon.
- 5 We couldn't believe our _____ when we saw our holiday flat. It wasn't finished!
- 6 Alan was over the _____ when he got his promotion.

Study Link Student's Book p.151 Vocabulary Bank

3 GRAMMAR unreal conditionals

a Right (✓) or wrong (✗)? Correct the wrong phrases.

- 1 Our boss was more popular if he didn't take himself so seriously. ✗ Our boss would be more popular
- 2 If you hadn't eaten so little at lunch, you wouldn't be so hungry now. _____
- 3 You hadn't have sprained your ankle if you'd been looking where you were going. _____
- 4 If you moved to London, I'd have really missed you. _____
- 5 The police would have caught the burglar if they would have arrived earlier. _____
- 6 The criminal would have gone to prison if there had been more evidence. _____
- 7 We wouldn't have come to Bangkok if we knew it was the monsoon season. _____
- 8 Gary wouldn't have a cough if he wouldn't smoke so much. _____

b Write third conditional sentences.

- 1 If / he / not leave footprints / the police / not catch / him
If he hadn't left footprints, the police wouldn't have caught him.
- 2 We / make / a snowman / if / the snow / not melt

- 3 I / not have a swim / if / I / know / the water was so cold

- 4 If / we / set off / earlier / we / arrive by now

- 5 If / they / not be / so desperate / they / not hijack / the plane

- 6 You / not get / so sunburnt / if / you / use / more suncream

- 7 They / regret it / if / they / not buy / the flat



- 8 They / not understand / the film / if / they / not read / the book before

Study Link Student's Book p.138 Grammar Bank 4A

4 PRONUNCIATION -ed endings; word stress

a Write the adjectives in the correct column according to the pronunciation of -ed.

astonished delighted depressed devastated
offended overwhelmed relieved shocked thrilled

		id
astonished		

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 1 <u>confused</u> | 5 homesick |
| 2 grateful | 6 exhausted |
| 3 disappointed | 7 terrified |
| 4 furious | 8 desperate |

c Practise saying the words in a and b.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
evacuation (noun)	/ɪvækjuː'eɪʃn/	
explosion (noun)	/ɪks'pləʊzən/	
jungle (noun)	/'dʒʌŋɡl/	
raft (noun)	/rɑːft/	
survivor (noun)	/sə'vaɪvə/	
paralysed (adj)	/'pærəlaɪzd/	
catch fire (verb)	/kætʃ 'faɪə/	
collide with (verb)	/kə'laɪd wɪð/	
react (verb)	/ri'ækt/	
shake (verb)	/ʃeɪk/	

LISTENING

a Listen to a firefighter giving a talk at a community centre on house fires and complete the notes. You sometimes have to write more than one word.

HOUSE FIRES

Fires usually break out when people ¹ _____

PRECAUTIONS

Install a ² _____ and make an escape plan

Don't smoke in ³ _____

Put ⁴ _____ where children can't get them

Don't leave cooking food unattended, especially ⁵ _____

IF THERE IS A FIRE

If you get trapped in your home, ⁶ _____ all the doors

Put ⁷ _____ or clothing under the doors

Hold a damp cloth over your ⁸ _____ to protect your lungs

If you try to escape, it is best to crawl because the nearer you are to the floor the ⁹ _____ the air is

Get out as soon as possible, don't try to save ¹⁰ _____

b Listen again with the tapescript on p.76 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

4 B

Men may have invented fire, but women discovered how to play with it.

Sarah Jessica Parker, American actress

How I trained my husband

1 GRAMMAR past modals

a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

■ **must, might, can't (deduction)**

when you are sure something is true: **must**

They **must** be out. There aren't any lights on.
She **must** have a lot of money. She drives a Porsche.

when you think something is possibly true: **may / might**

His phone's switched off. He **might** be on the plane now.
She **might not** like that skirt. It's not her style.
She's not at home. She **may** be working.
He hasn't written. He **may not** have my address.

when you are sure something is impossible / not true: **can't**

He **can't** be ill. I saw him at the gym.
They **can't** be Italian. They're speaking to each other
in Spanish.

- We often use *must, may / might* and *can't* to say how sure or certain we are about something (based on the information we have).
- In this context the opposite of *must* is *can't* NOT *mustn't*.

b Circle the correct answer.

- 1 You (**must**) / **might** be relieved that you found your credit card!
- 2 Jane **must** / **can't** be cold. She's shivering. Give her a towel.
- 3 Make sure you carry your mobile phone in a safe place or someone **might** / **can't** steal it.
- 4 Her husband **can't** / **must** be the murderer. He was abroad when she was killed.
- 5 That **might** / **can't** be your suitcase. Your suitcase is a darker green.
- 6 I often sneeze when I'm near a cat. I **might** / **can't** be allergic to them.
- 7 Be careful! The floor **might** / **can** be slippery because it's just been cleaned.
- 8 That cardigan **must** / **might** be really warm. It's made of wool.

c New grammar. Rewrite the sentences using *must have, might have, or can't have*.

- 1 I'm sure the burglar got in through an open window.
The burglar *must have got in through an open window* .
- 2 Perhaps you left your bag on your seat in the restaurant.
You _____ .
- 3 I'm sure my wife didn't take my keys. She never does that.
My wife _____ .
- 4 Perhaps our neighbours have gone on holiday. There are no lights on in the house.
Our neighbours _____ .
- 5 I'm sure the Mayor didn't accept the bribe. He's a very honest man.
The Mayor _____ .
- 6 Perhaps the thieves sold the stolen goods.
The thieves _____ .
- 7 I'm sure my girlfriend was at home last night. She was studying for an exam.
My girlfriend _____ .
- 8 I'm sure I didn't borrow any money from you. I never forget things like that.
I _____ .

d Comment on the actions using *should / shouldn't have* and the words in brackets.

- 1 A Someone stole my MP3 player.
B You *shouldn't have left it on your desk* .
(leave it on your desk)
- 2 A I'm disappointed with my exam results.
B I'm sorry, but you _____ .
(study more)
- 3 A I'm exhausted and it's only Monday morning!
B You _____ at the weekend.
(do so much)
- 4 A My sister got a huge fine for speeding.
B She _____ . (drive so fast)
- 5 A Sarah's new dress doesn't suit her at all.
B I agree. She _____ . (buy it)
- 6 A I feel a bit embarrassed in my jeans – we aren't wearing the right clothes.
B I know. We _____ . (dress up)

Study Link Student's Book p.138 Grammar Bank 4B

2 READING

a Read the text quickly and match the titles to the paragraphs.

- A Can women read maps?
- B Do men lack empathy?
- C Can men multi-task?
- D Do women gossip more than men?

The battle of the sexes

Two members of the public, Jenny Row (female) and Christopher Black (male) agreed to take part in four experiments for a radio programme to find out if the typical male and female stereotypes are actually true. Here's what happened.



1

THE TEST: Jenny and Christopher were given a number of tasks to do in a set time. They had to cook a steak, make a cup of coffee, put a list of ten words in alphabetical order, answer two phone calls, send a text, and do some mental arithmetic.

THE RESULT: Christopher was better because he did one thing at a time. Jenny tried to do everything at once and made a mistake with her maths.

2

THE TEST: Jenny and Christopher had to navigate from one place to another in a town they didn't know.

THE RESULT: Jenny took twice as long as Christopher to get there. Psychologists say that men and women navigate in different ways. Men plan their route globally, whereas women navigate in relation to where they are at any one time. Jenny wasted a lot of time in the test consulting the map from different angles – turning it around so that it was in the same direction as she was.

3

THE TEST: Jenny and Christopher were recorded talking to a friend for fifteen minutes. Afterwards their conversations were analysed by a psychologist.

THE RESULT: While Jenny and her friend thought they had gossiped for about three minutes in total, Christopher and his friend thought that they hadn't gossiped at all. The result, however, was a surprise. The psychologist worked out that they had both in fact spent about eight minutes gossiping – just over half of the phone conversation. They had also talked about very similar things.

4

THE TEST: Jenny and Christopher took it in turns to be in a moderately stressful situation while the other observed them to note any changes in their feelings. What they noticed about each other was then compared with what they said they were feeling during the test.

THE RESULT: The psychologist said the results were equal. Although traditionally women are thought to be more able to identify and talk about feelings, men are becoming more understanding and this change will continue to happen.

b Read the text again and mark the statements T (True), F (False), or DS (Doesn't say).

- 1 Christopher was able to do several things at once.
- 2 Jenny completed the first task successfully.
- 3 Christopher reached his destination in under an hour.
- 4 Jenny considered different routes for her trip across town.
- 5 Both Jenny and Christopher spent a lot of time gossiping.
- 6 Christopher never gossips.
- 7 They had plenty of time for the final task.

c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a Underline the stressed words.

- F
- 1 He might have broken a bone.
- 2 You couldn't have seen a ghost.
- 3 They may have left by now.
- 4 We should have booked a table.
- 5 I must have been asleep.
- 6 She shouldn't have called the police.

b Practise saying the sentences in a.

4 VOCABULARY verbs often confused

Right(✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong verbs.

- If it carries on raining this afternoon, I expect the match will be cancelled. ✓ _____
- My brother remembered me about my grandmother's birthday. _____
- My boyfriend was stolen yesterday. They took his phone and his wallet. _____
- Jay often starts work before the sun rises. _____
- I don't believe people who say they never discuss with their partners. _____
- You seem like your mother. Your face is the same shape. _____
- Remember to turn the lights off before you leave. _____
- Have you listened about the floods in South America? _____
- I don't really matter what we have for lunch. _____
- Kim hopes to get the job, but he doesn't know if he did well at the interview. _____

5 MINI GRAMMAR would rather, had better

Complete the sentences with not more than five words including the word in **bold**.

- You should discuss the problem with the manager. **had**
You *had better discuss the problem* with the manager.
- I'd prefer to sit by the window than next to the aisle. **rather**
_____ by the window than by the aisle.
- It's very late so I don't think we should call them now. **not**
It's very late so _____ them now.
- She shouldn't eat anything today because she's been sick. **better**
She _____ anything today because she's been sick.
- What do you want to do, stay in or go out? **rather**
What _____, stay in or go out?
- I don't really want to go out tonight if you don't mind. **not**
_____ go out tonight, if you don't mind.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
behaviour (<i>noun</i>)	/bɪ'hɛvɪjə/	
mat (<i>noun</i>)	/mæt/	
pile (<i>noun</i>)	/paɪl/	
reward (<i>noun</i>)	/rɪ'wɔ:d/	
technique (<i>noun</i>)	/tek'ni:k/	
tense (<i>adj</i>)	/tens/	
ignore (<i>verb</i>)	/ɪg'nɔ:/	
lose your temper (<i>verb</i>)	/lu:z jə 'tempə/	
nag (<i>verb</i>)	/næg/	
provoke (<i>verb</i>)	/prə'vʊk/	

LISTENING

a Listen to three people talking about arguments they have had. Which speaker...

- A was accused of doing something they hadn't done? _____
- B accused somebody else of doing something they hadn't really done? _____
- C had an argument because a friend insulted someone? _____

b Listen again. Which speaker(s) stayed friends with the person they argued with?

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.76 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Let your body do the talking

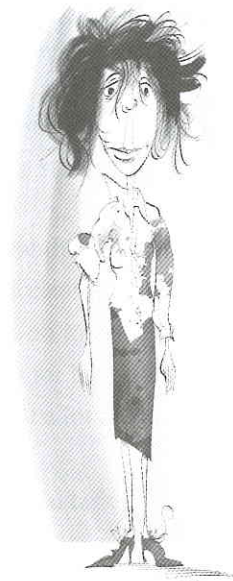
1 GRAMMAR verbs of the senses

a Complete the sentences with *like*, *as if*, or nothing (-).

- Your skin feels _____ dry. You need to use some cream.
- Ken's sweating. He looks _____ he's been running.
- We'd better take out the rubbish. The kitchen smells _____ terrible.
- I'm not sure what's in this curry but it tastes _____ chicken.
- I think this bag's real leather. It feels _____ leather anyway.
- It sounds _____ Rebecca has finally got up. I can hear her moving around.
- That dress looks _____ good. It really suits you.
- This spaghetti tastes _____ you used sugar instead of salt.

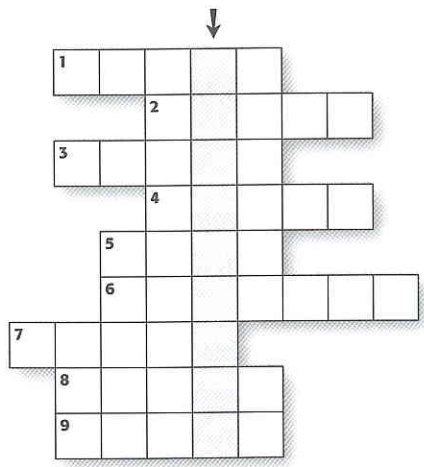
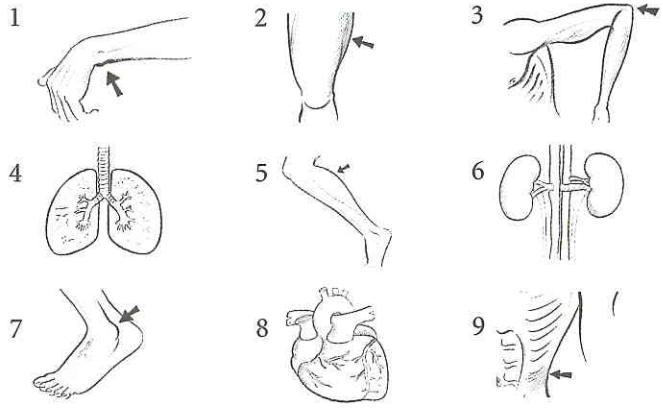
b Complete the sentences with a verb of the senses + *like* or *as if* where necessary.

- A lot of singers today *sound* exactly the same.
- This soup _____ horrible – it's really salty.
- Your boyfriend _____ a police officer – he's tall and well built.
- You _____ you're wearing my perfume!
- What's that noise? It _____ thunder.
- My skin _____ much softer since I've been using a new face cream.
- Are you sure this meat is beef? I've just tried it, and it _____ pork.
- Martha _____ really scruffy. She hasn't combed her hair and her clothes are dirty.



2 VOCABULARY the body

a Complete the puzzle to find the hidden body part.



b Circle the correct answer.

- My boyfriend eats / bites his nails when he's nervous.
- You must be tired because you can't stop **scratching** / yawning.
- John entered the room and **shook** / winked hands with the interviewer.
- She **waved** / frowned at me from the other side of the street to get my attention.
- Jessie **clapped** / combed her hair and put on her jacket to go out.
- Kieran **shrugged** / folded his shoulders when he didn't know the answer to the question.
- When you have a cold you spend most of your time **blowing** / chewing your nose.
- I hate it when people **stare** / raise at me when I am on a bus or on the underground.

c Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong idioms.

- 1 I always manage to put my leg in it when my girlfriend is with her friends. ~~X put my foot in it~~
- 2 If you don't learn those equations by head, you'll fail the exam. _____
- 3 Why don't you talk about your illness and get it off your brain? _____
- 4 Sarah's got butterflies in her stomach because she's starting her new job on Monday. _____
- 5 Don't take it personally. Joss is only pulling your hair. _____
- 6 He's starting to get cold feet about the diving expedition. _____
- 7 That song is really starting to annoy me now. I can't get it out of my ears. _____
- 8 Her name is on the tip of my finger, but I can't remember it right now. _____

Study Link Student's Book p.152 Vocabulary Bank

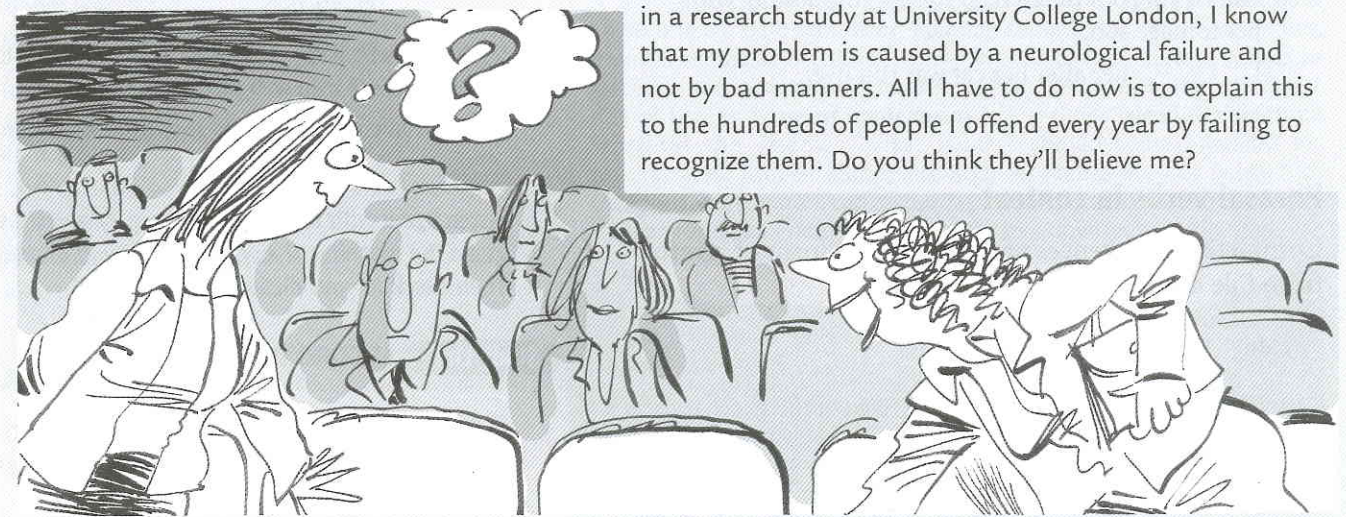
3 PRONUNCIATION gh

a Circle the word in each group where *gh* is pronounced /f/.

- 1 lightning (cough) thigh
- 2 rough although tight
- 3 caught bright laugh
- 4 delighted enough flight
- 5 frightened thorough tough

b Practise saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank



4 READING

a Read the article once and find out what Mary Ann Sieghart's problem is.

Who are you again?

Mary Ann Sieghart is one of the 2.5 per cent of the population that suffers from prosopagnosia – an inability to recognize people's faces out of context. She describes how it affects her life and the strategies she has devised to cope with it.

1 I'm moving along the row towards my seat at the theatre when I see a smiling woman clearly heading for the seat next to me. Do I know her? In a neutral venue like a theatre I have no idea if she is a colleague, a fellow parent at my children's school, a politician, or a friend. So I smile back and hope desperately that a few moments of conversation will give me a clue to her identity. Sure enough, it does. I soon realize she is the managing editor of the newspaper I work for. She sits in the office right next to mine, and I see her most days of the week.

2 I can remember reading adventure stories as a child in which someone would describe the criminal to the police, and thinking that I wouldn't know where to start. I consoled myself that I would get better at it as I got older. Sadly, I never did.

3 I rely strongly on hair, glasses, voice, and clothes, which means I can fail to recognize a friend if they have had a haircut, grown a beard, or started wearing glasses. I often find myself spending an hour and a half having lunch with a new acquaintance, trying furiously to imprint his features on my memory. Yet the chances are the next time I bump into him, I won't know who he is.

4 I used to think I must be lazy or thoughtless or uninterested in other people. Now that I have taken part in a research study at University College London, I know that my problem is caused by a neurological failure and not by bad manners. All I have to do now is to explain this to the hundreds of people I offend every year by failing to recognize them. Do you think they'll believe me?

- b Match the sentences to the correct paragraph.
- A Like many prosopagnosics, though, I have developed ways of coping.
- B I have had this problem all my life.
- C The consolation is that I have at last discovered that the problem is not my fault.
- D Here's a classic example.

- c Match the highlighted words to the correct definition.
- 1 a piece of information that helps you solve a problem a clue
- 2 not thinking about what the result of your actions will be _____
- 3 to deal successfully with a difficult situation _____
- 4 made somebody happier when they are very sad _____
- 5 a person that you know but who is not a close friend _____
- 6 a place where people meet for an organized event _____
- 7 to meet somebody by chance _____
- 8 plans you use in order to achieve something _____

- d Complete the sentences with the words from the text.
- 1 I had no idea I was going to bump into an old friend when I was walking to work today.
- 2 Working mothers sometimes find it difficult _____ working and bringing up a child.
- 3 It was really _____ of you not to call and tell me you were going to be late.
- 4 The _____ for the concert is the city football stadium.
- 5 If you won't tell me what my present is, can you just give me _____?
- 6 She's trying out different _____ for dealing with her teenage son.
- 7 I _____ her after her cat was run over.
- 8 He's only an _____ of mine, not a friend.

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb from File 4.

calm get hold set tell

- 1 They _____ off at seven, and arrived at the hotel at midnight.
- 2 We _____ off the bus at the wrong stop, and we had to walk for ages.

- 3 I mustn't get home late again – my father will _____ me off.
- 4 You'd better _____ on to me – the steps are very icy.
- 5 _____ down! There's no point getting so angry about it.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
body language (<i>noun</i>)	/'bɒdi læŋɡwɪdʒ/	
gesture (<i>noun</i>)	/'dʒestʃə/	
bitter (<i>adj</i>)	/'bɪtə/	
rough (<i>adj</i>)	/rʌf/	
smooth (<i>adj</i>)	/smu:ð/	
sour (<i>adj</i>)	/saʊə/	
fidget (<i>verb</i>)	/'fɪdʒɪt/	
rub (<i>verb</i>)	/rʌb/	
stroke (<i>verb</i>)	/strəʊk/	
tap (<i>verb</i>)	/tæp/	

LISTENING

a Listen to Jerry and Emma talking about a newspaper article about a new study. What is the study about? Do Jerry and Emma think it's true?

b Listen again and complete the missing information.

- 1 The study measured the _____ of the women's _____.
- 2 They then showed the women photos of _____ young men.
- 3 The women had to choose the men they found _____.
- 4 The photos only showed the men's _____, _____, and _____.
- 5 Women who had _____ with their fathers chose men with similar facial features.
- 6 Two women who the study gives as examples are _____ and _____.

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.77 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

1 THE INTERVIEW

Complete the missing words.

- 1 A Why was your basketball match cancelled?
B The referee didn't s _____ up.
- 2 A What d _____ does it make if you wear one shirt or the other?
B I want to look good tonight. Kate's going to be at the party.
- 3 A Why did you turn off my CD?
B Because you've listened to it o _____ and over again today and I'm sick of it!
- 4 A How did the rehearsal go?
B Not too bad. I forgot my words at one p _____, but nobody noticed.
- 5 A I don't know how to apologize to Tom.
B Just say sorry and t _____ it. It's not difficult!
- 6 A Does Hamlet die at the end of the play?
B I have no idea. I'm really ignorant, as far as theatre g _____.

2 IN THE STREET

Complete the sentences with an expression from the list. Then match them to sentences A–E.

a buzz a couple of about to as far as sort of

- 1 My sister played hockey for the local team, but that's _____ she went.
- 2 She really gets _____ out of singing in public.
- 3 In the middle of the play the main actor _____ flew across the stage.
- 4 I've seen that film _____ times.
- 5 The ballet was _____ start when one of the dancers fainted.

- A He looked like he had wings.
B The last time I watched it was with my girlfriend.
C The audience had to wait while she was taken to hospital.
D She never played professionally.
E It makes her feel really good.

3 READING

- a Read the article. Find two possible disadvantages of watching a play at the Globe Theatre.

- b Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 When is the ticket office open?
- 2 Was the theatre built on the site of Shakespeare's original theatre?
- 3 Are there performances every day of the year?
- 4 Are all the tickets the same price?
- 5 Can you sit in the Yard?
- 6 Can you visit the theatre without seeing a play?
- 7 How can you book a ticket?
- 8 What happens if it rains?

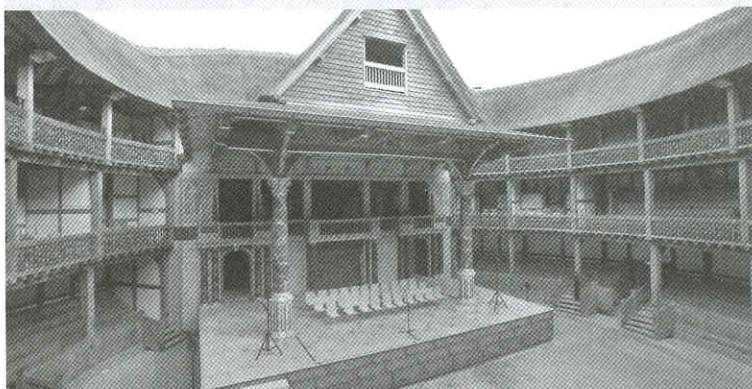
- c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

A visit to Shakespeare's Globe Theatre

The Globe Theatre is situated on the banks of the River Thames, about 200 metres from the original site of Shakespeare's 1599 building. It is a faithful reconstruction of the open-air playhouse where Shakespeare worked, and for which he wrote many of his greatest plays, such as *Hamlet*, *Othello*, and *King Lear*. Due to the fact that the theatre is open to the sky, the season is limited to only six months of the year, running from April to October. However, guided tours of the theatre are held all year round, and the neighbouring exhibition centre is also open to visitors.

The theatre itself is circular in shape and the seated areas are in the lower, middle, and upper galleries. In addition to the seated galleries, there is an area in front of the stage called *the Yard*, where visitors can stand and watch the play. All seats are priced according to visibility, so the best seats are in the middle of each of the three galleries and cost around €48. Ticket holders are advised to bear in mind that the roof and all the gallery seats are held up by pillars, so that from no seat is there a perfect view of the stage. There are 700 standing tickets available for each performance priced at around €7.50, but visitors are reminded that under no circumstances are they allowed to sit in this area.

Public booking for each season opens in February. Tickets may be booked in person or by telephone at the theatre ticket office or online via the ticket agency, Seetickets. The ticket office is open from 10.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m. from Monday to Saturday. Before attending a performance at the Globe, visitors need to bear certain things in mind. As it is a sixteenth-century replica, the theatre does not boast any of the comforts of modern-day life and performances continue whatever the weather. Ticket holders should come prepared for heat or cold, rain or shine, although umbrellas are not permitted. Inexpensive rain macs can be purchased from the Globe shop by those who are unlucky enough to be caught in a downpour in *the Yard*.



5 A

I don't like country music, but I don't mean to denigrate those who do. And for those who do like country music, denigrate means 'put down'.

Bob Newhart, American comedian

The psychology of music

1 GRAMMAR gerund and infinitives

a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

■ gerunds and infinitives

Use the gerund (verb + *-ing*)

1 after prepositions and phrasal verbs.

I'm very good at **remembering** names.
She's **given up smoking**.

2 as the subject of a sentence.

Eating out is quite cheap here.

3 after some verbs, e.g. *hate, spend, don't mind*.

I don't mind getting up early.

Common verbs which take the gerund include: *enjoy, hate, finish, like, love, mind, practise, spend, stop, suggest* and phrasal verbs, e.g. *give up, go on, etc.*

Use the infinitive (+ *to*)

1 after adjectives.

My flat is **easy to find**.

2 to express a reason or purpose.

He's saving money **to buy** a new car.

3 after some verbs, e.g. *want, need, learn*.

She's never **learned to drive**.
Try not to make a noise.

Common verbs which take the infinitive include: (*can't*) *afford, agree, decide, expect, forget, help, hope, learn, need, offer, plan, pretend, promise, refuse, remember, seem, try, want, would like*

Use the infinitive (without *to*)

1 after most modal and auxiliary verbs.

I can't drive. We **must** hurry.

2 after *make* and *let*

My parents didn't **let me go** out last night.
She always **makes me laugh**.

- Gerunds and infinitives form the negative with *not*, e.g. *not to be, not being*.
- More verbs take the infinitive than the gerund.
- These common verbs can take either the gerund or infinitive with no difference in meaning: *begin, continue, prefer, start*.

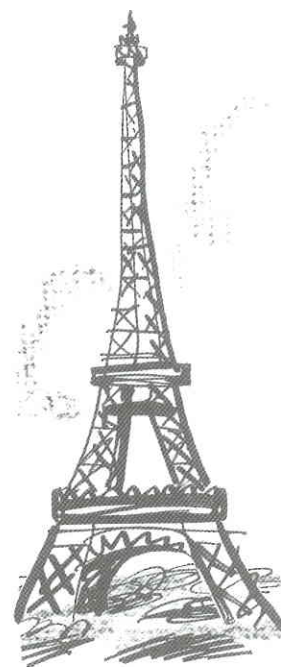
b Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 Skiing is my favourite sport. (ski)
- 2 My husband doesn't mind _____ the housework. (do)
- 3 It's impossible _____ in this heat. (sleep)
- 4 Our teacher makes us _____ our homework. (check)
- 5 Tom's doctor suggested _____ a specialist about his back. (see)
- 6 Let's not go by train. It would be easier _____. (drive)
- 7 My girlfriend's very possessive. She doesn't let me _____ with my friends any more. (go out)
- 8 _____ alone in a strange country can be a fascinating experience. (travel)
- 9 Kim expects _____ the test results by Friday. (receive)
- 10 We would like _____ our bill now as we're leaving early. (pay)

c New grammar. Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb from the list.

buy call climb find iron read send spend

- 1 My sister is trying to find a new job. She doesn't get on with her boss.
- 2 Do you remember _____ the apple tree in our parents' garden when we were children?
- 3 We need _____ a plumber because the shower's broken.
- 4 Laura forgot _____ her mother a birthday card.
- 5 I remembered _____ the milk, but I forgot to buy any bread!
- 6 If you can't sleep at night, try _____ a book in bed. It will help you relax.
- 7 That shirt needs _____ if you want to wear it tonight.
- 8 I'll never forget _____ a romantic weekend in Paris with my first boyfriend.

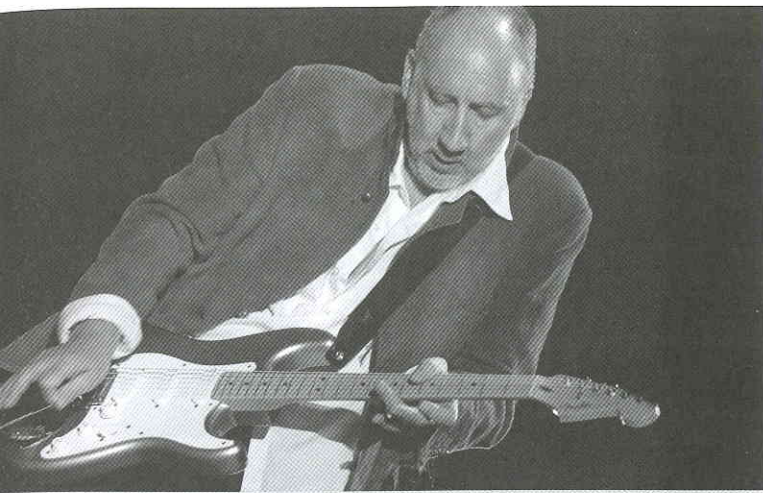


Study Link Student's Book p.140 Grammar Bank 5A

2 READING

a Read the article quickly and answer the questions.

- 1 What danger does the article refer to?
- 2 Who is affected by the problem?



The hidden dangers of rock music

Pete Townshend, the legendary guitarist of the British band The Who, has confessed on his website that he is suffering from a musician's nightmare: he is deaf. His hearing loss has meant that he has been unable to complete recording sessions for a new Who album. Townshend describes his hearing trouble as 'terrible' and he gives the reason for his deafness as the rock music he has helped to invent and promote.

Although the volume at the group's explosive concerts in the 1960s was excessive, Townshend does not think this is the main cause of his hearing loss. Instead he blames the earsplitting sounds emitted through studio headphones during years of recording. Although he can still hear speech, Townshend has to take a 36-hour break between recording sessions to allow his ears to recover. This is what is delaying the release of The Who's first studio album for over 25 years, and plans for a world tour.

Musicians are particularly vulnerable to hearing loss. Phil Collins, 54, has suffered a 60 per cent hearing loss and the American rapper Foxy Brown, 26, is to undergo an operation to restore her hearing after going almost totally deaf.

However, it is not only the music makers who need to take care. Townshend has also issued a warning to users of MP3 players that they should turn the volume down. Doctors say that noise-induced hearing loss is caused when the delicate hair nerves of the ear suffer trauma from loud sound vibrations for long periods of time. Users of portable music players are advised to limit listening to one hour a day and keep the volume down, but research found that four out of ten young adults listened for longer.

Some consolation for musicians with hearing problems is that the German composer Beethoven continued writing music even when he went deaf. Unfortunately for Pete Townshend, it's playing music that he is most worried about. 'Music is my life. You can write it when you're deaf, but you can't hear it or perform it.'





b Read the article again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).

- 1 Townshend has had to stop recording the new Who album. T
- 2 He thinks the cause of his deafness is the high volume of music in his concerts. —
- 3 Townshend cannot hear conversations. —
- 4 Phil Collins is also partially deaf. —
- 5 Townshend warns music lovers not to use MP3 players. —
- 6 Doctors say that MP3 players should only be used for one hour a day. —
- 7 Beethoven composed music even though he was deaf. —
- 8 Townshend prefers writing music to performing. —

c Underline five words you don't know. Try to guess the meaning, then check with your dictionary.

3 PRONUNCIATION *ch* and *y*

a Circle the word with a different sound.

	cheerful charged chorus chilly
	psychic catchy choir headache
	chaos chest check-in changeable
	machine challenge chauffeur champagne

b Write the words. They all contain *-y*.

- 1 /'sɪmfəni/ symphony
- 2 /'lɪrɪks/ _____
- 3 /'rɪðəm/ _____
- 4 /'laɪfstɑɪl/ _____
- 5 /'kʌntri/ _____
- 6 /sɑ:'kɑ:tərɪst/ _____

c Practise saying the words in a and b.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 *Sound Bank*

4 VOCABULARY music

a Order the letters to make musical instruments.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 lolec <u>cello</u> | 5 xepsnahoo _____ |
| 2 oiivnl _____ | 6 roaykdbce _____ |
| 3 sbars rtgiau _____ | 7 npoia _____ |
| 4 sudmr _____ | 8 goanr _____ |

b Complete the sentences with words from the list.

choir composer conductor DJ orchestra
lead singer singer-songwriters ~~soprano~~

- It's important for a soprano to be able to hit all the high notes.
- Tchaikovsky is my favourite _____.
- Bono is the _____ of U2.
- The _____ played some terrible music at the club we went to.
- One of the most famous _____ of all time is Bob Dylan.
- The school _____ has played in lots of concerts – the musicians are all really talented.
- My brother and his fiancée have asked the church _____ to sing at their wedding.
- The _____ told the violinists to play a little more loudly.

c Complete the sentences with the missing words.

- The song in that advert is so catchy I can't stop singing it.
- I can't stand my sister's new boyfriend. He's always _____ his own trumpet.
- The manager wants to talk to us about our mistake, so let's go and face the _____.
- My son has a very good _____ for music. He only needs to hear a song once and then he can play it on the piano.
- If you play me the _____ of that song, I might remember the words.
- I can't understand the lyrics of this song at all. They are totally _____.
- This piece of music is so _____. It always brings tears to my eyes.
- I find this band's music really _____. All their songs sound the same and they send me to sleep.

Study Link Student's Book p.153 Vocabulary Bank

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
lecture (<i>noun</i>)	/'lektʃə/	
complex (<i>adj</i>)	/'kɒmpleks/	
conventional (<i>adj</i>)	/kən'venʃənl/	
curious (<i>adj</i>)	/'kjʊəriəs/	
(high) pitched (<i>adj</i>)	/pɪtʃt/	
affect (<i>verb</i>)	/ə'fekt/	
commit suicide (<i>verb</i>)	/kə'mɪt 'su:ɪsaɪd/	
exploit (<i>verb</i>)	/ɪks'plɔɪt/	
compared with	/kəm'peəd wɪð/	
tend to	/tend tə/	

LISTENING

a Listen to three people talking about music which has made an impression on them. Which speaker(s)...

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| A doesn't enjoy hearing a particular song? | _____ |
| B describes the atmosphere in a concert hall? | _____ |
| C talks about the influence a particular group had? | _____ |
| D talk positively about a particular song? _____ and _____ | |
| E mentions a famous guitarist? | _____ |
| F performed a song badly? | _____ |

b Listen again with the tapescript on p.77 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

5 B

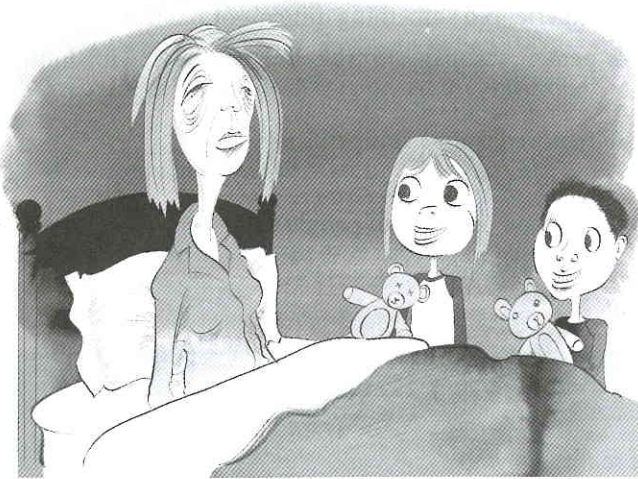
Dreaming permits each and every one of us to be quietly and safely insane every night of our lives.

William Dement, *sleep expert*

Counting sheep

1 GRAMMAR *used to, be used to, get used to*

a Circle the correct answer.



- 1 Before my sister had children she used to sleep / sleeping for eight hours every night.
- 2 When we moved to Britain from Poland we weren't used to drive / driving on the left.
- 3 Chris got divorced last year but he soon got used to live / living on his own.
- 4 When Lucy was little she didn't use to eat / eating vegetables at all.
- 5 My parents are slowly getting used to be / being retired.
- 6 My new job is exhausting. I'm not used to get up / getting up so early.
- 7 Did you use to play / playing a musical instrument at school?
- 8 Living in a foreign country seems strange at first, but you soon get used / get used to it

b Rewrite the sentences using a form of *used to, get used to, or be used to*.

- 1 Stephen wasn't usually so assertive in the past.
Stephen didn't use to be so assertive.
- 2 Has working at night become more familiar now?
Have you _____ at night?
- 3 I don't normally have breakfast so early.
I'm _____ breakfast so early.

- 4 Chloe wore her sister's clothes when she was a child.
Chloe _____ her sister's clothes when she was a child.
- 5 We have adapted to living in the country very quickly.
We have _____ in the country very quickly.
- 6 She often looks after people so she will make an excellent nurse.
She is _____ people, so she will make an excellent nurse.
- 7 They still don't know how to use the new system – they keep making mistakes.
They haven't _____ the new system yet.
- 8 I couldn't sleep because I didn't normally sleep on a sofa.
I couldn't sleep because I wasn't _____ on a sofa.

Study Link Student's Book p.140 Grammar Bank 5B

2 PRONUNCIATION linking words, sounds

a Mark the linked words.

- 1 We used to use blankets, but now we have a duvet.
- 2 I'm not used to having a nap after lunch.
- 3 We soon got used to living in our new house.
- 4 I didn't use to have problems getting to sleep.
- 5 Terry is used to working at night so he doesn't feel tired.
- 6 She couldn't get used to living on her own.

b Write the words.

- 1 /jɔːn/ yawn
- 2 /'pɪləʊ/ _____
- 3 /'dʒet lægd/ _____
- 4 /fɪrts/ _____
- 5 /snɔː/ _____
- 6 /'naitmeə/ _____

c Practice saying the sentences in a and words in b.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

3 READING

a Read the article quickly and answer the questions.

- 1 What was the object of the reality show?
- 2 Why were there complaints about the show?

b Read the article again. Complete it with the missing sentences.

- A The first of these was a relaxing massage in the early hours of the morning.
- B The TV company insists that the contestants' welfare was carefully considered throughout the programme.
- C On the third day one of the participants requested to leave the contest voluntarily.
- D Every time one of them fell asleep, the jackpot went down.
- E The last one to fall asleep would claim the £97,000 prize.

c Match the highlighted words and phrases to the correct definition.

- 1 experiences of hearing or seeing things that aren't really there *hallucinations*
- 2 treated in an unfair way for the advantage of others _____
- 3 difficult _____
- 4 experienced something difficult or painful _____
- 5 person, company, or team that competes with another _____
- 6 removed from a competition _____
- 7 being examined _____
- 8 a person or group of people who check things are being done properly _____

What will they think of next?

The latest reality show to come **under scrutiny** by media **watchdog** Ofcom is the sleep deprivation game *Shattered*, where ten contestants **endured** extreme sleep deprivation to compete for a potential prize fund of £100,000.

The object of the game was to see who could stay awake for the seven days the show lasted. ¹ Each day the contestant that coped the worst was **eliminated** leaving three contestants to participate in the final on the last day.

During the show the contestants faced some **tough** challenges which were designed to make them fall asleep. ² Others included listening to a bedtime story, watching paint dry, counting sheep, and hugging a giant teddy bear for an hour.

In the final contest, the three remaining contestants were told to go to bed in a darkened room. ³ The eventual winner, a nineteen-year-old trainee police officer took 90 minutes longer to go to sleep than her **rivals** and was declared the winner on live television without knowing she had won.

However, psychologists have criticized the programme and accused its makers of putting contestants' health at risk. During the course of the show contestants complained of **hallucinations**, exhaustion, and paranoia. ⁴ After over 75 hours in the Sleep Lab, she decided that she had had enough and after extensive talks with the production team she decided to go home.

⁵ A spokesperson from the show denied accusations that they had **exploited** participants and endangered their health. He maintained that they had gone to great lengths to ensure the health and safety of the contestants at all times.

4 VOCABULARY sleep

a Complete the sentences with a word connected to sleep.

- 1 My grandmother takes sleeping pills to help her to sleep.
- 2 I never o _____, because I always set my a _____ clock before I go to bed.
- 3 Do you ever remember your d _____ when you wake up in the morning?
- 4 I was feeling s _____ so I went to bed.
- 5 We were cold in bed, so we opened the wardrobe to look for a b _____.
- 6 It's impossible to wake Matt up. He sleeps like a l _____.
- 7 Alex never drinks coffee after dinner, because it k _____ him a _____.



b Match the words to the definitions.

duvet insomnia siesta set nap fall asleep

- 1 a thick cover filled with feathers that you sleep under duvet
- 2 a short sleep during the day _____
- 3 the condition of being unable to sleep _____
- 4 you do this to an alarm clock _____
- 5 you do this when you go to bed and close your eyes _____
- 6 a short sleep, usually after lunch, especially in hot countries _____

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
crane (<i>noun</i>)	/kreɪn/	
debt (<i>noun</i>)	/det/	
fire brigade (<i>noun</i>)	/'faɪə brɪgeɪd/	
lack (of) (<i>noun</i>)	/læk/	
ladder (<i>noun</i>)	/'lædə/	
deprived (<i>adj</i>)	/dɪ'praɪvd/	
crawl (<i>verb</i>)	/kroʊl/	
sleepwalk (<i>verb</i>)	/'slɪ:pwɔ:k/	
stay in touch (<i>verb</i>)	/steɪ m tʌtʃ/	
tempt (<i>verb</i>)	/tempt/	

LISTENING

a Listen to a radio programme about sleep therapy and answer the questions.

- 1 What are Yelo and Metronaps?
- 2 What kind of people use them?

b Listen again and complete the notes on sleep therapy. You sometimes have to write more than one word.

Sleep therapy: a response to the results of sleep medicine:
People who don't get enough sleep are less ¹ _____ at work and are more likely to take time off ² _____.

Sleep spas:

Yelo

You lie in a hexagonal sleep pod with:

a very comfortable ³ _____ reclining chair and a ⁴ _____.

The lighting is really ⁵ _____.

Metronaps

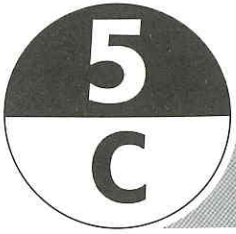
You lie in a chair with a spherical ⁶ _____.

A session lasts ⁷ _____ minutes. It costs between ⁸ \$ _____ and \$ _____.

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.77 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate



A newspaper is a device unable to discriminate between a bicycle accident and the collapse of civilization.

George Bernard Shaw, Irish author

Breaking news

1 GRAMMAR reporting verbs

a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

■ reported speech: statements and questions

direct speech	reported speech
'I like shopping.'	She said (that) she liked shopping.
'I'm going tomorrow.'	He told her (that) he was going the next day .
'I'll always love you.'	He said (that) he would always love me .
'I passed the exam!'	She told him (that) she had passed the exam.
'I've forgotten my keys.'	He said (that) he had forgotten his keys.
'Are you married?'	She asked him if / whether he was married.
'What's your name?'	I asked him what his name was .
'Where do you live?'	They asked me where I lived .

- Tenses usually change like this:
present > past; will > would; past simple / present perfect > past perfect
 - Some modal verbs change, e.g. **can > could, may > might, must > had to**. Other modal verbs stay the same, e.g. *could, might, should, etc.*
 - If you report what someone said on a different day or in a different place, some other time and place words can change, e.g. **tomorrow > the next day, here > there, this > that**, etc.
'I'll meet you here tomorrow.' > He said he'd meet me there the next day.
 - When a question begins with a verb (not a question word), add **if** (or **whether**).
'Do you want a drink?' > He asked me **if / whether** I wanted a drink.
 - In reported questions you also have to change the word order to subject + verb, and not use **do / did**.
- ! Be careful – After said don't use a person or an object pronoun:**
He said he was tired or He told me he was tired NOT ~~He said me...~~

reported speech: commands and requests

direct speech	reported speech
'Go away.'	She told him to go away.
'Don't worry.'	The doctor told me not to worry .
'Can you help me?'	I asked the shop assistant to help me.

- To report an imperative or request, use **told** or **asked** + person + infinitive with **to**.
- To report a negative imperative, use a negative infinitive e.g. **not to do**

b Write the sentences in reported speech.

- 'I'm leaving on Wednesday.'
He said that _____.
- 'I've never been to Japan.'
She told him that _____.
- 'You must be on time.'
They told me that _____.
- 'Where's the bus station?'
He asked me _____.
- 'Did you do the homework?'
The teacher asked us _____.
- 'What time does the show start?'
The woman asked me _____.
- 'Don't tell anybody.'
Anna told me _____.
- 'Can you close the window?'
The old man asked me _____.

c New grammar. Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong phrases.

- My brother refused coming with me to the party.
~~X refused to come~~ _____
- Jane promised give me the book back the next day.

- The man denied mugging the old lady.

- My boyfriend encouraged me going to London to improve my English.

- The tour guide recommended to visit the Picasso Museum.

- The teacher threatened giving the students extra homework if they didn't stop talking.

- My sister persuaded me not to go to the party.

- The police accused him of not tell them the truth.

d Report the direct speech using the reporting verb in **bold**.

1 'Don't forget to sign the documents,' my boss told me. **remind**

My boss *reminded me to sign* the documents.

2 'I really don't think you should leave your job,' Jack's friend told him. **advise**

Jack's friend _____ his job.

3 'Why don't we go for a walk?' said Katie. **suggest**
Katie _____ for a walk.

4 'Shall I make the lunch?' her husband said. **offer**
Her husband _____ the lunch.

5 'Don't park in this street,' the man said to us. 'It's 'no parking'' **warn**

The man _____ in that street.

6 'I'm sorry I was so rude,' I said. **apologize**
I _____ so rude.

7 'Would you like to stay for dinner?' Julia's friend asked her. **invite**

Julia's friend _____ for dinner.

8 'I'm going with you to the doctor's,' Jane said to me. **insist**

Jane _____ to the doctor's with me.'

Study Link Student's Book p.140
Grammar Bank 5C

2 PRONUNCIATION word stress, sounds

a Underline the stressed syllable.

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 admit | 5 promise |
| 2 convince | 6 remind |
| 3 offer | 7 deny |
| 4 insist | 8 threaten |

b Write the reporting verbs.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 /sə'dʒest/ <i>suggest</i> | 5 /pə'sweɪd/ _____ |
| 2 /rɪ'fju:z/ _____ | 6 /ə'kjuz/ _____ |
| 3 /əd'vaɪz/ _____ | 7 /rɪ'gret/ _____ |
| 4 /ɪn'vart/ _____ | 8 /ə'gri:z/ _____ |

c Practise saying the words in a and b.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

3 VOCABULARY the media

a Complete the sentences with jobs in the media.

- The *paparazzi* were waiting outside the restaurant to photograph the princess.
- I'm surprised none of the c_____ liked the film; I thought it was great!
- The n_____ was very embarrassed when he couldn't pronounce the politician's name.
- The c_____ got very excited when the first goal was scored.
- My brother is a r_____ for *The Sunday Times*.
- The newspaper e_____ decided not to print the reporter's story because it was too politically sensitive.
- I've stopped watching that show because I can't stand the p_____.
- Laura works from home as a f_____ j_____.

b Match the sentences to the sections of a newspaper.

- It's a good week to sort out your finances.
- There will be heavy rain all day and gale-force winds.
- For Sale. Sony Vaio laptop computer. Nearly new.
- Clues across.
- Johnny Depp was excellent in his role as Jack Sparrow.
- Murderer arrested in city park.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------|
| a small ads | c front page | e crossword |
| b horoscope | d weather forecast | f review |

c Complete the headlines with a word from the list.

back hit ~~axed~~ row quit quiz tipped wed

- TV Presenter *axed* by BBC in _____ over dress code.
- Singer to _____ Brazilian model.
- Minister to _____ after revelations about personal life.
- POLICE _____ WIFE AFTER MAN DISAPPEARS.
- Hollywood stars _____ presidential candidate.
- US stock market _____ by new company scandal.
- Ex-footballer _____ to win reality show.

Study Link Student's Book p.154 Vocabulary Bank

4 MINI GRAMMAR *as*

Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 As I hadn't set my alarm | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 I'm not as assertive | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 My brother works as | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 As we were boarding the plane | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 As the reviews were bad | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 Today is just as hot | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 On the picnic we used a sheet as | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 As the actors came back on stage | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- a the audience started to clap.
 b as yesterday.
 c a tablecloth.
 d we didn't go and see the film.
 e as my sister.
 f I overslept this morning.
 g an educational psychologist.
 h I dropped my passport.

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the phrasal verbs from File 5 with the correct particle.

down on over up (×2)

- I'm not ready yet. You go on ahead and I'll catch _____ with you later.
- I need to do more exercise. I'm putting _____ weight!
- Can I fill _____ your glass? You've almost finished.
- If you have a headache, why don't you lie _____ on the sofa for half an hour?
- Be careful you don't fall _____. The pavement is very slippery.



More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
celebrity (<i>noun</i>)	/sə'lebrəti/	
debate (<i>noun</i>)	/di'beɪt/	
down side (<i>noun</i>)	/'daʊnsaɪd/	
performance (<i>noun</i>)	/'pɜ:fɔ:məns/	
shed (<i>noun</i>)	/ʃed/	
spokesman (<i>noun</i>)	/'spəʊksmən/	
spectacular (<i>adj</i>)	/spek'tækjələ/	
make a living (<i>verb</i>)	/meɪk ə 'lɪvɪŋ/	
shoot (<i>verb</i>)	/ʃu:t/	
bound to	/baʊnd tə/	

LISTENING

- a Listen to the news programme and write the day of the week the story is from.**

- A 'hero' who made an embarrassing mistake _____
- A recycler needs rescuing _____
- Millionaire for a day! _____

- b Listen again and choose a, b, or c.**

- The woman got stuck in the bin because
 - her bag was too heavy.
 - she climbed into it.
 - she was trying to rescue her child.
- The bank clerk made a mistake because
 - he counted the money wrongly.
 - he put too many zeros in the space.
 - he wrote the wrong number in the space.
- The postman tried to hit the muggers with
 - something he was carrying.
 - his hands.
 - the woman's bag.

- c Listen again with the tapescript on p.78 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.**

Study Link MultiROM

1 THE INTERVIEW

Circle the correct option.

- 1 A How long have you been playing the guitar?
B Well, I started time/way back in 1965, when I was at school.
- 2 A Why are you going into town, if you're not going to buy anything?
B I just like walking around/away and having a look in the shop windows.
- 3 A So, did you get all the answers right?
B Yes, I did! Nobody knew the answer to the last question, except/even me!
- 4 A Where did you meet your boyfriend?
B Well, I first met him through a friend, and then, very oddly/differently, we met by chance backpacking in Peru.
- 5 A Who was that woman you were talking to?
B She said she knew me from somewhere and it turned off/out we went to the same school 30 years ago!
- 6 A Did you enjoy the play?
B Not really. I mean/I say the acting was terrible, wasn't it?

2 IN THE STREET

Complete the missing words.

- 1 After dinner we sat in the garden and chilled o_____.
- 2 In my free time I just enjoy h_____ out with my friends.
- 3 She didn't g_____ any sleep all night because she was worried about her exams.
- 4 There are q_____ a few valuable antiques in my grandmother's house.
- 5 They had no i_____ where they'd left the car.

3 READING

- a Read the article about the Glastonbury Festival and find out what you can do there.
- b Read the article again and answer the questions.
 - 1 Where is the festival held?
 - 2 How do people get there?
 - 3 How long does it last?
 - 4 How much do tickets cost?
 - 5 What kind of accommodation is there?
 - 6 How many people come?
 - 7 How long has it been taking place?
 - 8 Where can you get tickets?
- c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

The Glastonbury festival of Contemporary Performing Arts

Glastonbury is the largest performing arts festival in the world. It takes place over a long weekend in the vale of Avalon in the south-west of England, an area full of symbolism, mythology, and religious tradition dating back many hundreds of years. The best thing about the festival is the wide variety of people who attend; there are people of all ages, backgrounds, nationalities, lifestyles, faiths, concepts of fashion, and musical taste. And then, of course, there's the music.

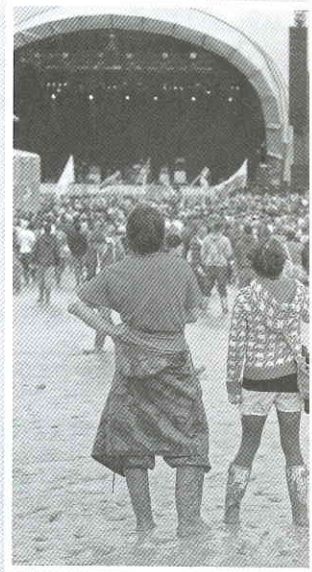
The Pyramid Stage is the centre of the festival every year, and some of the most famous artists in the world have played there, for example New Order, REM, Coldplay, and Radiohead. Other venues include the Dance Village, the Jazzworld Stage, and the John Peel Stage, where new bands often play their first major gig.

The first Glastonbury Festival was held on 19th September, 1970, the day after Jimi Hendrix died. About 1,500 people paid the entrance fee of £1 (€1.50) which included free milk from the farm. The headline act at this first festival was Marc Bolan from T-Rex. Since then the festival has moved to coincide with the summer solstice (the change from spring to summer on 21st June). The number of visitors to the Glastonbury Festival nowadays is now nearing the 200,000 mark, and the price of a weekend ticket is well over £120 (€180).

Accommodation at the festival is, for the most part, in tents, caravans, or camper vans. The festival organizers provide many fields for camping throughout the site. There are camping areas next to the main stages, or visitors can pitch their tent on the Limekilns and Hitchin Hill grounds where they have more chance of getting some sleep. Campsite wardens are in action at all entrances to the festival and direct campers to an available field where they can pitch their tent.

Tickets generally go on sale at the beginning of April, but are only available to those who have registered previously with the festival. They can be bought online via a ticket agency or by a special telephone ticket line. In recent years there has been an increase in the number of tickets available for people who arrive at the festival by coach, in an attempt to solve the traffic jams caused by too many cars descending on the site. When purchasing a coach and festival ticket package, the journey to the festival must be made by coach as the festival tickets will be given out on the way to the festival.

Glastonbury has much more than just music, with theatre, circus, cabaret, markets, and kids activities too. Join in the fun and you will be guaranteed the experience of a life time!



6 A

Today's public figures can no longer write their own speeches or books, and there is some evidence that they can't read them either.

Gore Vidal, American author

Speaking to the world

1 READING

a Read the text quickly and match each summary to the correct paragraph.

- 1 The stars of the show
- 2 The success of the series
- 3 The content of the programme
- 4 The public's reaction to the series
- 5 The opening words of each programme

SPACE... the final frontier

A These are the first words of the introduction to one of television's most popular space series ever: *Star Trek*. Set in the 23rd century, *Star Trek* follows the adventures of the starship Enterprise and her crew, led by Captain James T. Kirk and his First Officer Mr Spock. The introduction goes on to **state the purpose** of the starship's journey:

Its five-year mission: to explore strange new worlds, to seek out new life and new civilizations, to boldly go where no man has gone before.

B Created by Gene Roddenberry, the original *Star Trek* series was broadcast from September 1966 to June 1969. At first the show was not successful and it was cancelled by NBC after its third season. However, during reruns of the series **a cult following** developed and fan clubs were set up world-wide. Fans **coined the term** 'Trekkies' to describe themselves and an entire subculture grew up around the show.

C In the *Star Trek* universe mankind developed spaceships that could travel faster than light. Late in the 21st century, humans joined with other species in the galaxy to form the United Federation of Planets. *Star Trek* stories usually depicted the adventures of humans and alien beings who served in the Federation's Starfleet. Surprisingly, the show also reflected a number of cultural **issues** of the period in which it was made including racism, human rights, sexism, and the role of technology.

D The three main characters were Kirk, Spock, and McCoy and in many of the stories the three men **clashed**. Kirk had a passionate and often aggressive character, Spock was coolly logical, and McCoy was sarcastic but always compassionate. McCoy and Spock hardly ever agreed on the solution to a problem, and their frequent arguments became very popular with viewers. The original actors, who had been **largely unknown** before the show, became celebrities, but after the episodes were broadcast, they found themselves type-cast because of their roles.

E Since the first series of 80 episodes, now referred to as 'The Original Series', five more series of *Star Trek* have been broadcast and eleven feature films have been made. Despite **a shaky start**, *Star Trek* has become one of the longest-running and most profitable TV series ever shown on television, and phrases such as 'Beam me up, Scotty' (transport me back to the ship, i.e get me out of here) have entered the English language.



- b Read the text again and choose a, b, or c.
- The mission of the Starship Enterprise in the series *Star Trek* was
 - to protect the Earth.
 - to explore space.
 - to colonize new planets.
 - During the first series of *Star Trek*
 - fans became known as 'Trekkies'.
 - a large number of fan clubs were set up.
 - the show had quite low audience ratings.
 - One of the unusual things about *Star Trek* is that
 - the spaceships were very unsophisticated.
 - it looked at some real life problems.
 - the humans and aliens relate together.
 - The three main characters in *Star Trek*
 - tended to agree with each other.
 - didn't get on at all.
 - often argued.
 - There have been ... series of *Star Trek* in total.
 - six
 - five
 - eleven
- c Look at the highlighted words and expressions. What do you think they mean? Check with your dictionary.

2 GRAMMAR articles

- a Right (✓) or wrong (x)? Correct the wrong phrases.
- Lewis can't still be at the work. It's really late.
X at work
 - I'm exhausted; I'm going to the bed.

 - As soon as we realized we'd been robbed, we went straight to the police station.

 - My mother is very fond of the cats.

 - The MP3 player I gave my sister for her birthday doesn't work. _____
 - The women tend to be more emotional than the men. _____
 - The next week we're going to go ice-skating.

 - Joshua bought new motorbike yesterday.

- b Complete the sentences with *a*, *the*, or no article.
- They've just built a new university in my town.
 - My grandfather's in _____ hospital having an operation.
 - There's _____ beautiful church in the centre of my village.
 - Daisy goes to the gym while her children are at _____ school.
 - My brother's at _____ university. He's studying architecture.
 - They live in a flat quite near _____ hospital.
 - My brother teaches in _____ primary school that we both went to.
 - _____ prison is about 10 kilometres outside the city.
- c Complete the sentences with *the* where necessary.
- The toy industry in _____ China is the biggest in the world.
 - There are 50 states in _____ USA.
 - _____ M1 motorway was closed yesterday because of the floods.
 - _____ Hyde Park is one of the largest green spaces in London.
 - Edmund Hillary was the first man to climb _____ Mount Everest.
 - _____ Lake Victoria is the largest lake in _____ Africa.
 - _____ Panama Canal connects _____ Atlantic Ocean to _____ Pacific Ocean.
 - _____ Balearic Islands are situated in _____ Mediterranean Sea.

Study Link Student's Book p.142 Grammar Bank 6A

3 PRONUNCIATION /ðə/ or /ði:/

- a Tick (✓) the correct pronunciation of *the*.

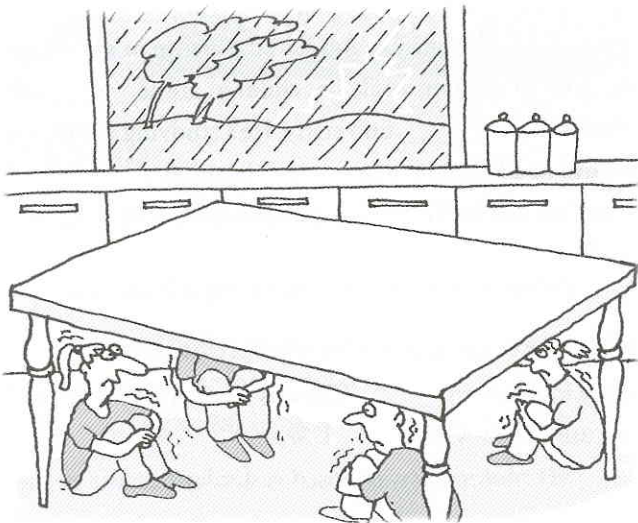
- | | /ðə/ | /ði:/ |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 She bought a new coat in the sales. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 The accident happened last night. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 The clocks go back next weekend. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 The uniform my sister wears to school is awful. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Have you ever been to the USA? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 The end of that film was really sad. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- b Practise saying the sentences in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

4 VOCABULARY collocation: word pairs

a Complete the phrases.



- 1 My children always hide under the table when there's thunder and lightning.
- 2 I enjoy the peace and _____ of the countryside when we go for a walk.
- 3 Roz always has a piece of bread and _____ with her meals.
- 4 We stayed in a bed and _____ when we visited London.
- 5 It takes ages for children to learn to use a knife and _____ properly.
- 6 I suppose I'll have to go to the dentist sooner or _____.
- 7 Nathan has more or _____ finished his homework, so he's going to have a break.
- 8 It's all or _____ with Sue; she either calls every day or you don't hear from her for weeks.

b Complete the word pair idioms.

- 1 We only take a few bits and pieces with us when we go on holiday.
- 2 Unfortunately, Julie's brother is down and _____, somewhere in New York.
- 3 She left her husband because there wasn't any give and _____ in their marriage.
- 4 My life has its ups and _____, but in general I'm quite happy.
- 5 The streets of the city were extremely dangerous because of the lack of law and _____.
- 6 We arrived safe and _____ after a three-day journey through the mountains.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
astronaut (<i>noun</i>)	/'æstrənɔ:t/	
mankind (<i>noun</i>)	/mæn'kaɪnd/	
quote (<i>noun</i>)	/kwəʊt/	
spacecraft (<i>noun</i>)	/'speɪskrɑ:ft	
speech (<i>noun</i>)	/spi:tʃ/	
ancient (<i>adj</i>)	/'eɪnʃənt/	
global (<i>adj</i>)	/'glɔ:bl/	
punctual (<i>adj</i>)	/'pʌŋktʃuəl	
beforehand (<i>adv</i>)	/'br'fɔ:hænd/	
properly (<i>adv</i>)	/'prɒpəli/	

LISTENING

a Listen to a space historian talking about the life of Yuri Gagarin. What was he famous for? What happened to him in the end?

b Listen again and complete the notes. You sometimes have to write more than one word.

Yuri Gagarin

Gagarin was born in a small ¹ _____ in Russia called Klushino.

He worked as a ² _____ in the Soviet Air Force.

The Soviets chose Gagarin and ³ _____ other cosmonauts for their space programme.

Yuri's main strengths were his 'bright mind' and ⁴ _____.

The flight took place on April 12th, ⁵ _____. Yuri was ⁶ _____ years old at the time.

He took ⁷ _____ to complete the flight. He had to eject from the spacecraft at an altitude of ⁸ _____.

After the flight Yuri became a worldwide ⁹ _____ and visited many countries. He also became Deputy Training ¹⁰ _____ of cosmonauts.

In March 1968 Yuri was ¹¹ _____ during a routine training flight.

He is buried in the walls of the ¹² _____ in Red Square.

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.78 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

6 B

A great city is that which has the greatest men and women.
Walt Whitman, American poet

Bright lights, big city

1 READING

a Read the text and number the paragraphs in the correct order.

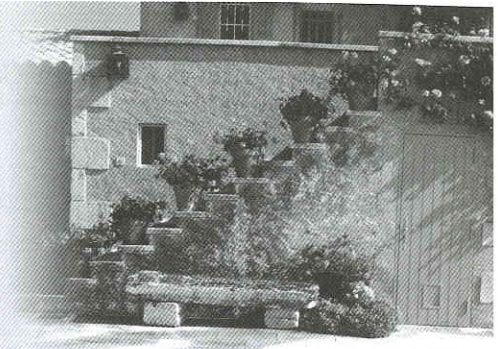
b Read the text again and mark the sentences T (True), F (False), or DS (Doesn't say).

- 1 Clive spent a year and a half in the South of France. T
- 2 Clive earned \$250,000 a year. —
- 3 He didn't have enough money to stay in France. —
- 4 He enjoyed the peace and quiet in France. —
- 5 When he split up with his girlfriend Clive started looking for a new job. —
- 6 He didn't have to apply for his new job in London. —
- 7 Clive bought his house in London. —
- 8 He is very happy living and working in London. —

c Look at the highlighted phrasal verbs and verb phrases. What do you think they mean? Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words.

- 1 Do you think you and your boyfriend will split up if you go abroad and he stays here?
- 2 My brother _____ all sport when he started getting back pains.
- 3 We _____ the chance to see U2 in concert because we were away on holiday at the time.
- 4 My brother isn't very responsible with money. He often _____ his monthly salary in just two weeks.
- 5 Jessica is _____ the position of Human Resources manager next month.
- 6 When Emily's company asked for volunteers to open an office in Barcelona, she _____.
- 7 I _____ about my boss when he started listening to our complaints.
- 8 The chairperson always _____ the decisions made in a meeting before it finishes.

Everyone makes mistakes



A He now lives in a one-bedroom flat just off Sloane Street in the very heart of London. He can step out of his door straight into the city. He still visits his house in France at weekends, but he is much happier in his new life. His London job is not as stressful as his Manhattan job was, but he describes it as 'fantastic fun'. He **sums up** his decision to go back to work in the following words: 'I just wanted the challenge again.'

B Secondly, he found it hard to get used to the pace of life. He had been used to life in the big city in a corporate environment with three or four things going on all the time. In France, with nothing to do in the evenings, he found himself going to bed at 9.00 p.m. every night which eventually became tedious. He started feeling that he might be **missing out on** something.

C At the age of 40, Clive Cooke decided to **give up** his high-pressure job in Manhattan and retire to the south of France. He sold his house for \$250,000, loaded all his furniture onto a ship, and moved to a village between Cannes and Nice with his girlfriend at the time. Yet 18 months later he was back in the big city and working again, this time in London, **taking up** another management position. So, what went wrong? What made Clive **change his mind**?

D Finally, Clive **split up** with his girlfriend. They found that spending 24 hours together with nothing more to do than sunbathe at the side of the pool was very different from the stimulating life they had led in Manhattan. And being alone with no one to talk to in a beautiful house in the countryside was not the retirement Clive had planned. So when he received a call from a colleague offering him the job in London, he **jumped at the chance**.

E The first problem was a financial one. Clive could not believe how fast his money disappeared when he did not have a regular salary. In the end he **went through** about three times more than he had planned, and he realized he would have to sit down and budget his money better if he wanted it to last.

2 VOCABULARY towns and cities

a Match a word in list A to a word in list B to make words connected to towns and cities.

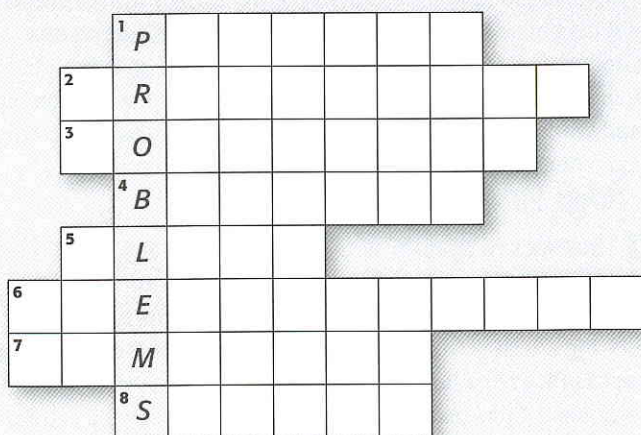
A ~~financial~~ cable law city pedestrian
concert old football cycle taxi

B car hall ~~district~~ stadium courts
street centre rank town lane

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------|
| 1 <u>financial district</u> | 6 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 8 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 9 _____ |
| 5 _____ | 10 _____ |

b Complete the puzzle.

- the noun from *poor*
- a long line of cars that moves very slowly or doesn't move at all
- when the air is dirty and dangerous
- people who live by asking others for money
- an area of the city where living conditions are very bad
- a situation where too many people live in one place
- people who sleep on the street because they have nowhere to live
- places of interest visited by tourists



c Complete the adjectives to describe a city.

- In a *cosmopolitan* city you can find people from many different cultures.
- Many families are leaving the area because it's become so r_____.
- There are a lot of factories where I live, so the town is quite i_____.
- My parents are from a very p_____ town where the people are very old-fashioned.
- Barcelona is a v_____ city with an exciting nightlife.
- Bangalore is now a very p_____ city because of all the traffic emissions.

Study Link Student's Book p.153 Vocabulary Bank

3 PRONUNCIATION multi-syllable nouns

a Circle the word with different word stress.

- cathedral (area) historic pollution
- provincial gallery synagogue neighbourhood
- entertainment isolation overcrowded majority
- pedestrian adolescent community industrial
- outskirts suburbs statue perform

b Practise saying the words in a.

4 GRAMMAR uncountable and plural nouns

a Circle the correct answer.

- We're trying to find a cheap accommodation / some cheap accommodation in London.
- My grandmother suffers from bad health / a bad health.
- We've bought a new furniture / some new furniture for the living room.
- Please can you give me some advice / an advice?
- I'd like a bread / some bread, please.
- We lost a luggage / a piece of luggage on the way back from Singapore.
- You need to get a new clothes / some new clothes for the summer.
- My girlfriend gave me a pyjamas / a pair of pyjamas for my birthday.

b Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

- 1 The traffic *is* terrible in the rush hour in the city centre.
- 2 My clothes _____ absolutely soaking. I got caught in a thunderstorm.
- 3 The new research into sleep patterns _____ fascinating.
- 4 Do you think my belongings _____ safe in the hotel room?
- 5 The outskirts of the town _____ quite run down and a bit depressing.
- 6 The good news _____ that we're getting married in the spring!
- 7 Politics _____ really fascinating – particularly for politicians!
- 8 The flight crew on this plane _____ all very young.
- 9 The staff at the hotel _____ always really polite and helpful.
- 10 John's climbing equipment _____ very heavy. I can hardly pick it up.

Study Link Student's Book p.142 Grammar Bank 6B

5 MINI GRAMMAR *have something done*

Rewrite the sentences with *have something done*.

- 1 Someone painted my brother's house.
My brother *had his house painted* _____.
- 2 Someone is going to mend my jacket.
I'm _____.
- 3 Someone cuts my boyfriend's hair every month.
My boyfriend _____ every month.
- 4 A mechanic has repaired my car.
I _____.
- 5 Someone will clean my carpets in the spring.
I'll _____ in the spring.
- 6 Some men are building a wall around my neighbour's garden.
My neighbours are _____ around their garden.
- 7 Someone cleans Oliver's flat once a week.
Oliver _____ once a week.
- 8 A company is redesigning our garden.
We are _____.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
adolescent (<i>noun</i>)	/ædə'lesnt/	
dawn (<i>noun</i>)	/dɔ:n/	
(happy/sad) ending (<i>n</i>)	/'endɪŋ/	
ocean (<i>noun</i>)	/'eɪʃn/	
sunset (<i>noun</i>)	/'sʌnset/	
ashamed (<i>adj</i>)	/ə'ʃeɪmd/	
convenient (<i>adj</i>)	/kən'vi:niənt/	
simple (<i>adj</i>)	/'sɪmpl/	
share (<i>verb</i>)	/ʃeə/	
the vast majority	/ðə vɑ:st mə'dʒɔ:rəti/	

LISTENING

a Listen to three people talking about their favourite big cities. Match the cities to the speakers.

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| A Buenos Aires | <input type="checkbox"/> Speaker 1 |
| B Vancouver | <input type="checkbox"/> Speaker 2 |
| C Prague | <input type="checkbox"/> Speaker 3 |

b Listen again and match the cities above (A–C) to their main features.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------|
| 1 its history and culture | _____ |
| 2 its natural beauty | _____ |
| 3 its buildings | _____ |
| 4 its music | _____ |
| 5 its lifestyle | _____ |
| 6 its European 'feel' | _____ |

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.78 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Eureka!

GRAMMAR quantifiers: *all/ every, etc.*

Right (✓) or wrong (✗)? Correct the wrong phrases.

- I've taken all shopping into the kitchen, OK? ~~X~~ *all the shopping*
- Everybody were very friendly. _____
- All went wrong at my job interview. _____
- On Wednesday I worked all day. _____
- All the men love cars. _____
- We go swimming every morning during the week. _____
- The most people enjoy going on holiday. _____
- Every rooms in this hotel has a big bathroom. _____

Complete the dialogues with *no, any, or none*.

- A Can I have a biscuit?
B Sorry, I don't have *any*.
- A What did you buy?
B Nothing. There were _____ shoes I liked or that I could afford.
- A How much homework have you done?
B _____. I don't feel like it right now.
- A I fancy an omelette for dinner.
B Oh dear. There aren't _____ eggs.
- A Do you like any of these sofas?
B No, _____ of them. I think they're all horrible.
- A How about a sandwich?
B There's _____ bread. Do you want me to go and get some?
- A When can you come?
B _____ day you like. I'm free all week.

Complete the sentences with a word from the list.

both either neither nor

- Both* my brother and my sister have children.
- _____ my boss nor my colleagues laughed at my joke.
- We'd like to go to _____ Greece or Portugal for our holiday this year.
- Neither my boyfriend _____ I eat meat.
- _____ my daughters are at university.
- I can't decide between the two paintings. I like _____ of them.
- _____ of my brothers visits me very often.

Study Link Student's Book p.142 Grammar Bank 6C

2 READING

- a Read the article quickly. What two functions does Rob Law's invention have?

Dragons' Den reject celebrates huge sales of 'worthless' invention

Less than a year ago the judges on the reality programme Dragons' Den rejected his invention. Now inventor Rob Law is having the last laugh after a product considered 'worthless' on the BBC television programme for young entrepreneurs has proved a huge commercial hit.

Mr Law, 29, from Bath, spent 11 years – and £17,000 of his own money – refining his design for a wheelie suitcase which doubles up as a child's ride-on toy. The plastic Trunki case is designed to allow youngsters aged three to six to take their own bag on holiday – and to sit on it when they are tired. But when Mr Law appeared on Dragons' Den last September, he was given a hard time by the famously unfriendly panel of investors.

Businessman Theo Paphitis ridiculed the product after managing to pull off one of the straps. His colleague Deborah Meadon, head of a holiday firm, declared bluntly that there was no market for the case. And the notoriously brusque tele-communications tycoon Peter Jones declared: 'I meet people like you all the time – you think you have something. I tell you, you don't.' The panel declined Mr Law's offer to give up 10 per cent of his new company in return for a £100,000 investment – an offer which valued the firm at £1 million.



Rob Law
and his
Trunki case

However, it now appears that the experts were wrong. After a succession of positive press reviews, Mr Law has sold 85,000 of his Trunki suitcases. It is marketed in 22 countries via a network of distributors. Retailing at £25, it has proved a hit at several high street stores. Mr Law said: 'When I went on to the programme I was full of confidence that I was going to get the investment I needed. But they were rude and obnoxious and just focused on the strap, which was actually something that was quite easily fixed. I was terrified that by appearing on the programme I may have ruined my company before it had even started. But afterwards we had loads of hits on the website from people who said they thought it was a brilliant idea. Now I am absolutely delighted to have proved the Dragons wrong. It just goes to show you should never give up.'

Mr Law also revealed that during filming he managed to sell two of the suitcases to Australian panellist Richard Farleigh, who wanted to invest £100,000 in return for half of the company. But Mr Law rejected the deal. He declined to say exactly how much the company – which is 100 per cent owned by him – is now worth, but said that it was more than £1 million. ■

b Read the text again and choose a, b, or c.

- 1 The Dragons' Den judges
 - a thought Rob Law's invention was funny.
 - b didn't like his invention.
 - c thought his invention would be a commercial success.
 - 2 Peter Jones thought that
 - a he had met Rob before.
 - b other people had had a similar idea.
 - c Rob hadn't had a very good idea.
 - 3 Rob wanted the judges
 - a to give him £100,000 for a 10 per cent share of his company.
 - b to give him £1 million for his company.
 - c to buy £100,000 worth of suitcases.
 - 4 Rob felt that the judges
 - a could have fixed the strap on his case.
 - b only looked at one feature of his suitcase.
 - c ruined his company.
 - 5 One of the judges
 - a invested in the company.
 - b bought half the company.
 - c bought his product.
- c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

3 VOCABULARY science

a Complete the sentences with a word made from the words in **bold**.



- 1 I always knew, right from the start, that I wanted to be a scientist .
science
- 2 Factories manufacturing plastics produce a lot of _____ waste.
chemistry
- 3 My daughter's best subject at school is _____. **biologist**
- 4 One of the most controversial issues of our time is _____
engineering. **gene**
- 5 _____ is a mystery to me. I failed every exam I ever took.
physicist
- 6 Simon works as a _____ for a large mining company. **geology**

b Match each verb to a suitable noun.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------------|
| 1 do | a a machine |
| 2 make | b a theory |
| 3 prove | c an experiment |
| 4 invent | d research |
| 5 develop | e a discovery |
| 6 do | f a drug |

c Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb phrase from b.

- Scientists have been trying for years to develop a drug that will cure the common cold.
- A company has _____ which can prepare and cook meals for you.
- Researchers _____ an important _____ completely by accident last month.
- The students _____ in their chemistry class, but it went horribly wrong!
- It took a long time for Darwin to _____ his _____ of evolution.
- Many scientists have _____ into why we are living longer.

4 PRONUNCIATION changing stress

a Look at the words. Is the stress on the same syllable? Tick (✓) the correct column. Use your dictionary to help you.

	same syllable	different syllable
1 photograph / photography	—	✓
2 discover / discovery	—	—
3 scientist / scientific	—	—
4 chemist / chemistry	—	—
5 geology / geologist	—	—
6 invent / invention	—	—
7 develop / development	—	—
8 experiment / experimental	—	—

b Practise saying the words in a.

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb from File 6.

come crash hurry run think

- Scientists try to _____ up ways of making our lives easier.
- I'm very sorry. I can't see you tonight. Something urgent has _____ up.

- The motorcyclist was going so fast he nearly _____ me over.
- The car left the road and _____ into a tree.
- We'll have to _____ through the last points at this meeting as we don't have much time.

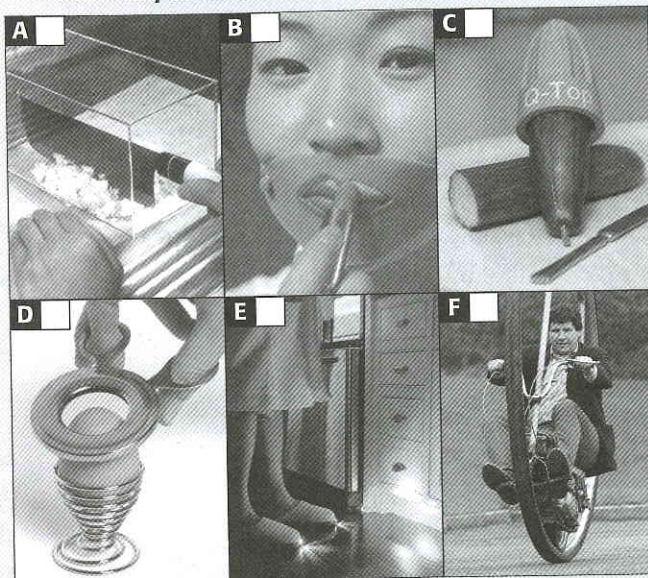
More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
desert (<i>noun</i>)	/ˈdezət/	
genius (<i>noun</i>)	/ˈdʒiːniəs/	
illusion (<i>noun</i>)	/ɪˈluːʒn/	
lens (<i>noun</i>)	/lenz/	
substance (<i>noun</i>)	/ˈsʌbstəns/	
bizarre (<i>adj</i>)	/brɪˈzɑː/	
blind (<i>adj</i>)	/blaɪnd/	
toxic (<i>adj</i>)	/ˈtɒksɪk/	
vanish (<i>verb</i>)	/ˈvænɪʃ/	
in search of	/ɪn sɜːtʃ əv/	

LISTENING

a Listen to two people talking about these inventions that never became popular. Number the pictures in the order they are mentioned.



b Listen again with the tapescript on p.78 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

1 THE INTERVIEW

Complete the mini dialogues with a word from the list.

aware number opposed quite

- 1 A What sort of car are you thinking of buying?
B Well, we need _____ a big one because of the kids.
- 2 A Why are there so many empty seats on the plane?
B A _____ of people missed the flight because of the traffic.
- 3 A Is crime a problem where you live?
B I'm not _____ of there being any serious problems, no.
- 4 A Was the festival well attended?
B Not very. There were only about 3,000 people, as _____ to 5,000 last year.

2 IN THE STREET

Complete the missing words.

- 1 A Where do you want to go next summer?
B I don't mind. A _____ that's hot and has a nice beach.
- 2 A Where do you fancy going next weekend?
B The place I would m _____ like to visit is Venice.
- 3 A Did you have a good time at your sister's house?
B Yes, it was great! She's so l _____ that I didn't have to worry about the kids making a noise.
- 4 A Do you miss anything about city life now you live in the country?
B Well, I don't miss the h _____ and bustle, if that's what you mean.

3 READING

- a Read the article and find out what a 'Segway' is.
- b Read the article again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).
- 1 Tourists often visit Budapest just for a couple of days. _____
 - 2 Budapest is sometimes compared to another European city. _____
 - 3 Segways can be used on the main roads and on the pavement. _____
 - 4 To make the Segway move, a rider has to press a button. _____
 - 5 Tourists on a City Segway Tour are shown the sights by a guide. _____
 - 6 The price of a Segway tour includes entrance to the main museums of the city. _____
 - 7 Tours are cancelled if it rains. _____
 - 8 At the start of a tour, riders have time to learn how to ride a Segway. _____
- c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

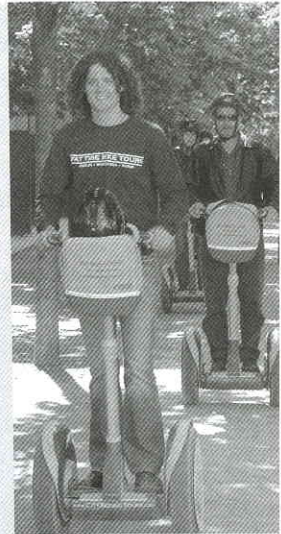
The Segway Tour of Budapest

With its fascinating history, incredible architecture and rich cultural heritage, Budapest is one of today's top weekend destinations in Europe. Known as the 'Paris of Central Europe' there is plenty to do and see in the two parts of the city which are separated by the majestic river Danube. What better way to see the sights than to take a City Segway Tour and glide around on your own personal transport?

A Segway is a self-balancing personal transportation device designed for use in a pedestrian environment. It travels on two wheels and is guided by gyroscopes that respond to the body's movements. The rider stands on a small platform between the two wheels holding on to handlebars at waist height. It takes a while to get used to a Segway's movement, but once you do, it's a safe and comfortable way of getting around.

On a Segway tour of Budapest, visitors are taken to visit many of the key sights including St Stephen's Basilica, the Hungarian State Opera House, and the famous Chain Bridge over the Danube. During the tour the guide gives historical and current information about the city, and tells fascinating stories which contribute to an unforgettable experience. Although visitors do not enter any of the city's numerous museums, the tour is an ideal way to find out where the most important places are.

Tours operate in all weather and in case of rain ponchos are available for anyone that needs them. Tours run every day of the year at 10.00 a.m. and from April to October at 6.30 p.m. too. One tour lasts between two and a half and three hours, including a 30-minute orientation session in the park for riders to get used to their Segway. Anyone over the age of 12 can join except for pregnant women, and a helmet must be worn at all times. The price is €55 and reservations can be made online.



Glossary

- glide around* to move smoothly without making an effort
- gyroscopes* a wheel inside a frame, that doesn't change position when the wheel moves
- handlebars* the metal bar you hold when you are riding a bicycle (or a Segway)
- poncho* a type of coat with no sleeves and one hole for your head

I wish you wouldn't...!

1 GRAMMAR wish + past simple and would

a Complete the sentences with a suitable form of the verb in brackets.

- The weather's awful. I wish it would stop raining. (stop)
- I'm too short to be a model. I wish I _____ taller. (be)
- Living in the country is so boring. I wish I _____ in a big town. (live)
- You always leave the bathroom in a mess. I wish you _____ your wet towel. (hang up)
- My sister is really annoying. I wish she _____ my clothes without asking. (not borrow)
- Public transport is terrible where I live. I wish I _____ a car. (have)
- I'd really like to move to a bigger flat. I wish I _____ to buy one. (can afford)
- I'm fed up with my husband. I wish he _____ every football match that is on TV. (not watch)

b Write sentences with *wish* + past simple or *wish* + *would*.

- I didn't get the job because I can't speak French.
I wish I could speak French.
- I'm fed up with my brother using my computer.
I wish he _____.
- I'm really angry. You never help with the housework.
I wish you _____.
- Today is Sunday and I have to go to work tomorrow.
I wish I _____.
- My parents are driving me mad! They call me every day.
I wish they _____.
- I'm always broke, because I don't earn much money.
I wish I _____.
- I hardly see my boyfriend because he works at weekends.
I wish he _____.
- My boss really annoys me. She shouts all the time.
I wish she _____.

2 VOCABULARY -ed / -ing adjectives and related verbs

a Circle the correct answer.

- Matt's a really bad loser. He always gets extremely frustrated / frustrating when he doesn't win.
- My father has a very stressed / stressful job so he often comes home in a bad mood.
- Laura has been terrified / terrifying of dogs since she was bitten by one as a child.
- I was not amused / amusing when the children started firing their water pistols at me.
- The most tired / tiring part of my day is taking the train to and from work.
- We were completely exhausted / exhausting after we had finished painting the sitting room.
- Dylan always closes his eyes when a film gets too scared / scary.
- These dark, winter days are very depressed / depressing.

b Complete the sentences with an adjective made from the verb in **bold**.

- It was so embarrassing yesterday when I called your boyfriend by the wrong name. **embarrass**
- Sophie was really _____ when she found out her husband had lost his job. **shock**
- The service at the hotel was very _____ – everything was just perfect. **impress**
- People who talk loudly on their mobile phones are _____ . **irritate**
- Jet-skiing is an _____ sport. **excite**
- I was very _____ when I couldn't find my passport, but it soon turned up. **worry**
- What a _____ surprise! We weren't expecting you to visit so soon. **delight**
- Ethan was so _____ when he failed his driving test. **disappoint**

3 READING

a Read the article and match a heading to each paragraph.

- 1 The things that get on women's nerves
- 2 Hiding the truth
- 3 The nature of the research
- 4 Bad habits provoke allergic reactions
- 5 Men's complaints about women

b Match the highlighted words and expressions to the correct definition.

- 1 provoke a feeling spark a reaction
- 2 easier to understand or more obvious _____
- 3 important difficulties which are hidden _____
- 4 made them feel annoyed _____
- 5 advice you give many times to stop someone worrying _____
- 6 in addition to _____
- 7 cause a couple to break up _____
- 8 experience something many times _____

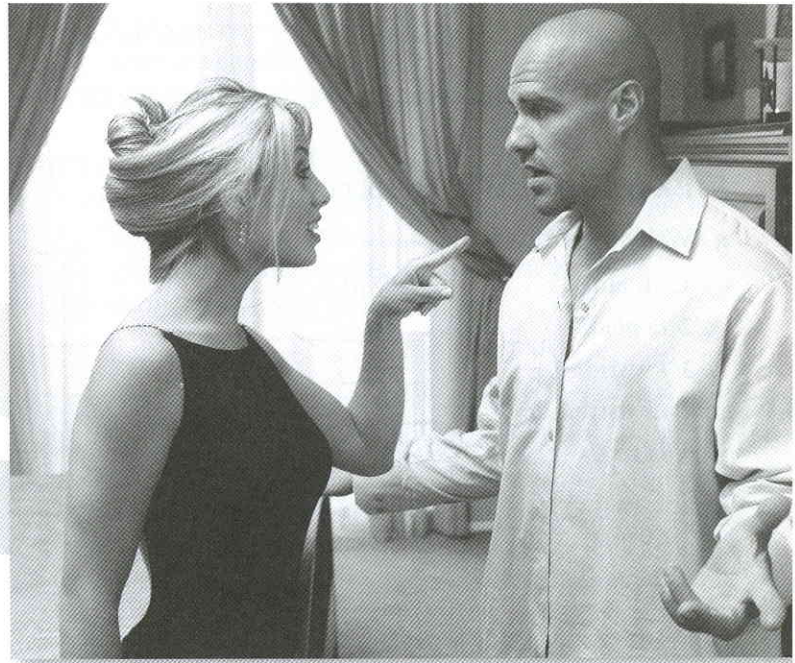
Marriage wreckers

A Bad habits, like failing to change the toilet roll or taking too long in the shops, may seem nothing more than minor irritations. However, according to a study into Social Allergies in Romantic Relationships carried out at an American university, they can be enough to wreck a relationship. The study looked at the causes leading to the breakdown of 160 relationships as well as examining the links between irritating habits and relationship success or failure in a further 274 individuals.

B Michael Cunningham, who led the research, said that when constantly repeated, minor irritations can spark a reaction similar to an allergic one. 'The first experience is likely to produce a small negative reaction, but repeated contact increases sensitivity,' he said. 'Wet towels on the bathroom floor cause mild irritation. But the reaction gets stronger each time it happens. Through repeated exposure it may produce a social allergy – a reaction of hypersensitive annoyance or disgust'.

c Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 What did the American study find?
bad habits can be enough to wreck a relationship
- 2 What makes a mild irritation become a social allergy?
- 3 Why is the reaction to a repeated minor irritation like an allergic reaction?
- 4 Which of the women's bad habits comes from being unsure about they look?
- 5 Which of the men's bad habits involve housework?
- 6 What happens less frequently with happier couples?



C The study found women's bad habits included lateness, excessive talking, taking too much luggage on holiday, and demanding constant reassurance about clothing. Men also mentioned that women got on their nerves when they were being possessive, critical, or bossy.

D Many of the habits stated by women about men were rather more straightforward. Apart from their refusal to clean the bathroom or make the bed, women were irritated generally by scruffy clothes, rude behaviour, and drunkenness.

E Researchers said that in cases where there were underlying problems in a relationship, arguments over minor incidents were more frequent than in happier couples. This is because it is much easier to argue about a person's irritating habits than to discuss the reasons why a relationship is failing.

4 GRAMMAR wish + past perfect

Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of a verb from the list.

wear catch not eat get not lend
set not spend not watch

- I'm cold. I wish I had worn a jumper.
- I feel sick. I wish I _____ that seafood last night.
- I'm going to be late. I wish I _____ my alarm earlier.
- I'm broke. I wish I _____ all my money.
- I'm really disappointed. I wish I _____ the job.
- Jenny can't sleep. I wish she _____ that horror film.
- I'm exhausted. I wish I _____ the bus home instead of walking.
- I'm furious with my son. I wish I _____ him my car.

Study Link Student's Book p.144 Grammar Bank 7A

5 PRONUNCIATION sounds

a Write the words.

- /dɪ'laɪtfl/ delightful
- /ə'nɔɪd/ _____
- /'wʌrɪd/ _____
- /frʌ'streɪtɪd/ _____
- /strest/ _____
- /ə'mjuzɪŋ/ _____
- /'θrɪlɪŋ/ _____
- /ə'fendɪd/ _____

b Practise saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 Sound Bank

6 VOCABULARY expressions with go

Complete the sentences with the correct form of an expression from the list.

go back on go far go off go on go through
go with go without go wrong

- I don't like John any more. I've gone off him.
- Your daughter works very hard. I'm sure she'll _____.
- I've bought a red handbag to _____ my red shoes for the wedding.
- There is no way most children today could _____ TV for a week.
- My sister promised she'd baby sit while we went out, but then she _____ her promise.

- Something has _____ with our dishwasher. It's really annoying!
- They're _____ the plans to see where they went wrong.
- Something strange is _____ outside the bank.

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
challenge (noun)	/'tʃæləndʒ/	
trolley (noun)	/'trɒli/	
waste (noun)	/weɪst/	
gentle (adj)	/'dʒentl/	
gorgeous (adj)	/'gɔ:dʒəs/	
witty (adj)	/'wɪti/	
drive you mad	/draɪv jə məd/	
gets on your nerves	/gets ɒn jə nɜ:vz/	
loads of	/ləʊdz əv/	
make up your mind	/meɪk ʌp jə maɪnd/	

LISTENING

- a Listen to a couple, Max and Ella, discussing the bad habits of different members of their families. Write M (Max's mum) or D (Max's dad). There are two adjectives which you don't need to use.

Who is...?

- unwell
- stubborn
- critical
- kind and friendly
- selfish
- insincere
- helpful

- b Listen again with the tapescript on p.79 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

Study Link www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upperintermediate

A test of honesty

1 READING

a Read the article quickly and tick (✓) the best summary.

- 1 Companies have stopped using celebrities in advertising because of the cost.
- 2 Celebrities involved in advertising campaigns are often overworked.
- 3 Consumers are buying fewer products advertised by celebrities.

b Read the article again and mark the sentences T (True) or F (False).

- 1 The debate in New York advertising circles is about which celebrities to use in future campaigns. F
- 2 Advertisers who don't want to use celebrities any more think the general public are bored of celebrities. —

- 3 Hollywood stars used to avoid appearing in advertisements because they wanted to preserve their image as film stars. —
- 4 In the 80s, the general public had seen too many celebrity images. —
- 5 The Chanel advertisement cost more to make than any previous advertisement. —
- 6 Uma Thurman no longer does advertisements for luggage. —
- 7 T-Mobile now uses ordinary people for its advertisements. —
- 8 Consumers are still very interested in the stars. —

c Look at the highlighted words in the text. Use any prefixes or suffixes to help you work out what part of speech they are (nouns, adjectives etc.) and try to guess their meaning from the context. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

Celebrity fatigue – the advertising disease?

There is only one
Pan-Cake Make-Up, the original
created by Max Factor Hollywood

It creates a lovely new complexion

It helps conceal tiny complexion faults

It stays on for hours without reapplying

Look for a lovely new complexion your next time you buy your make-up with Pan-Cake Make-Up for women. Pan-Cake Make-Up is the original, successful, long-lasting, and highly successful for complexion faults, stays on for hours without reapplying – you don't need anything else. So make up with Pan-Cake Make-Up. You'll be the envy of all the stars who appear in the new advertisement.

Pan-Cake Make-Up

ORIGINATED BY MAX FACTOR HOLLYWOOD



A debate is raging among advertising agencies in New York on the effectiveness of using celebrities in advertising campaigns. Those in favour insist on the tremendous benefit celebrities bring to a company; those against fear that consumers are suffering from overexposure to the stars, known in the field as 'celebrity fatigue'.

The use of celebrities in advertising is hardly new – Judy Garland and Joan Crawford were signed up by Max Factor in the 1930s and 1940s. For a long time after that celebrities avoided appearing in commercials to maintain the mystery surrounding their stardom. That all changed when advertisers started offering big money to Hollywood stars in the 80s and 90s in response to the public's insatiable appetite for celebrity images.

Gwyneth Paltrow was signed by Estée Lauder and Charlize Theron became a spokeswoman for Christian Dior. Nicole Kidman starred in what is reputedly the most expensive TV advertisement in history: a two-minute ad for Chanel No 5 perfume costing a reported \$43 million dollars. Catherine Zeta-Jones became the US face of the mobile phone giant T-Mobile.

However, there is increasing evidence that the tide is turning on the celebrity age. Louis Vuitton, the luxury luggage manufacturer, has returned to professional models after using actresses such as Jennifer López and Uma Thurman. T-Mobile has switched to a new campaign featuring anonymous 'men on the street' instead of renewing Zeta-Jones's contract. It appears that the stars are losing their selling power.

'Ten years ago, having a celebrity in your ad would make it more classy,' says Robert Thompson of Syracuse University. 'Now there's something cheesy about it...there are so many celebrities on so many magazines all the time.' It is clear that consumers are becoming increasingly resistant to celebrity marketers, whose chief commodity has lost its novelty value. The stars no longer have the status of icons and consumers are losing interest in them. Perhaps the Hollywood actors and actresses of the 50s and 60s were right after all.

2 VOCABULARY business and advertising

a Complete the text with the correct form of a verb from the list.

become expand export import
launch market set-up take over

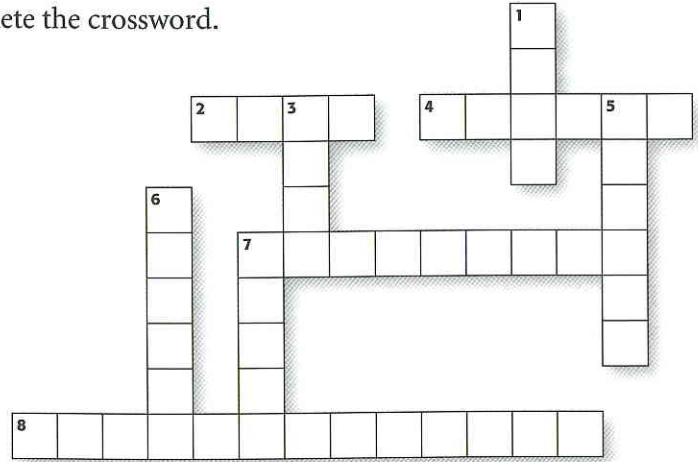
A friend of mine, Anne, was lucky enough to inherit a farm when she left university and so she decided to ¹ *set up* her own organic food business. The company ² its products under the name of Bioplus and one of the most successful products it makes is muesli. Not all of the ingredients come from the farm, as Anne ³ the nuts and dried fruit from South America. These she mixes with her own cereal products to make the muesli. Nationally, her muesli sells well, but she also ⁴ to Northern European countries like Norway and Sweden.

The company is ⁵ rapidly and Anne is always looking for new employees. Right now she's preparing to ⁶ a new cereal bar the company has been testing. Anne is very realistic as she knows she will never ⁷ the market leader in the field, but neither does she want one of the big cereal giants like Kelloggs and Nestlé to ⁸ her company.

b Complete the sentences with the correct form of *make* or *do*.

- 1 A company always *does* extensive market research before it launches a new product.
- 2 If a company _____ a loss, the staff often face job cuts.
- 3 Many countries started _____ business with China when the trade sanctions were lifted.
- 4 The Managing Director _____ the decision to close the factory yesterday.
- 5 My company is going to _____ 30 people redundant after Christmas.
- 6 The assistant manager is _____ the manager's job while he's away on holiday.
- 7 It's difficult to _____ money out of producing CDs these days.
- 8 If we _____ a profit again next year, the manager may think of opening another office.

c Complete the crossword.



Clues across →

- 2 ... calling is probably the most irritating advertising strategy.
- 4 My bank is going to open a new ... in the centre of town.
- 7 If my ... doesn't stop talking to me, I'll never get any work done today.
- 8 He works for a large ... with offices in Europe and South America.

Clues down ↓

- 1 My ... of department knows how to lead his team and get the best out of everyone.
- 3 The new company ... cost a lot to design.
- 5 The lawyer accompanied his ... to court.
- 6 Do you ever buy a product because you've seen the ...?
- 7 Sheraton is a well-known luxury hotel ...

Study Link Student's Book p.156 *Vocabulary Bank*

3 PRONUNCIATION changing stress in nouns and verbs

a Write the word, then write N (Noun) or V (Verb).

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|-------|
| 1 /'ɪmpɔ:t/ | <i>import</i> N | 5 /'prəʊɡres/ | _____ |
| 2 /dɪ'krɪs/ | _____ | 6 /m'krɪs/ | _____ |
| 3 /'rɪ:fʌnd/ | _____ | 7 /rɪ'kɔ:d/ | _____ |
| 4 /'prɒdju:s/ | _____ | 8 /træn'spɔ:t/ | _____ |

b Practise saying the words in a.

Study Link Student's Book p.158 *Sound Bank*

4 MINI GRAMMAR *whatever, whenever, etc.*

Complete the dialogues using *whatever, whichever, whoever, whenever, however, or wherever*.

- 1 A Where do you fancy going on holiday this year?
B *Wherever* you want. I don't mind.
- 2 A Do you want tea or coffee?
B I don't mind. _____ is easiest.

- 3 A What do you want for your birthday?
B Nothing special. I'll be happy with _____ I get.
- 4 A How often does your boyfriend go to the gym?
B He goes _____ he can.
- 5 A Who's coming to your party?
B _____ wants to come will be welcome!
- 6 A I don't know how to do this kind of exercise.
B You can do it _____ you want.

5 GRAMMAR clauses of contrast and purpose

a Circle the correct answer.

- Although** / **Despite** she's the head of department, she often goes out with her colleagues.
- The account manager called his client **for** / **to** arrange a meeting.
- The company is expanding **even though** / **in spite of** there is a recession.
- The firm made several people redundant **in order to** / **so that** cut costs.
- His secretary stayed at her desk **to not** / **so as not to** miss an important phone call.
- Everybody laughed at my boss's speech **in spite of** / **even though** his terrible jokes.
- The staff in my office are happy **despite** / **although** working long hours.
- She closed the door of her office **so as to** / **so that** nobody could hear her conversation.

b Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence using the word or phrase in **bold**.

- Although he's the managing director, he goes to work by bike. **despite**
He goes to work by bike *despite being the managing director* _____.
- Although they don't do any marketing, their products sell well. **in spite of**
Their products sell well _____.
- They reduced their prices so as to sell more products. **so that**
They reduced their prices _____.
- I have to leave work by six o' clock so that I don't miss my train. **so as**
I have to leave work by six o' clock _____.

- 5 Despite the fact that I was late, my boss wasn't angry. **although**

My boss wasn't angry _____.

Study Link Student's Book p.144 Grammar Bank 7B

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
bagel (<i>noun</i>)	/'beɪgl/	
brand (<i>noun</i>)	/brænd/	
guy (<i>noun</i>)	/gaɪ/	
leftovers (<i>noun</i>)	/'leftəʊvəz/	
workout (<i>noun</i>)	/'wɜ:kɑʊt/	
available (<i>adj</i>)	/ə'veɪləbl/	
scarce (<i>adj</i>)	/skeəs/	
analyse (<i>verb</i>)	/'ænləɪz/	
subscribe (<i>verb</i>)	/səb'skraɪb/	
to be fooled	/tə bi fu:ld/	

LISTENING

a Listen to three speakers talking about TV adverts. Write the name of the product in the advert they describe.

Speaker 1 _____

Speaker 2 _____

Speaker 3 _____

b Listen again. Which speaker...

- enjoyed the humorous dialogue in the advert? _____
- especially liked the way the music fitted with the images? _____
- didn't realize that the action was real, not a special effect? _____
- only remembers adverts if there is a song? _____
- found out more information about a particular advert? _____
- enjoyed the advert because of the celebrity in it? _____

c Listen again with the tapescript on p.79 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

1 GRAMMAR relative clauses

a Check what you know. Revise the rules. Then do b.

■ relative clauses

defining relative clauses (giving essential information)

Julia's the woman **who / that** works with me.
It's a book **which / that** tells you how to relax.
That's the house **where** I was born.
That's the boy **whose** father is an artist.
He's the man (**who / that**) I met on the plane.

- To give important information about a person, place, or thing use a relative clause (= a relative pronoun + subject + verb).
- Use the relative pronouns *who* for people, *which* for things / animals, and *where* for places. Use *whose* to mean 'of who' / 'of which'.
- You can use *that* instead of *who* or *which*.
- *Who*, *which*, and *that* can be omitted when the verbs in the main clause and the relative clause have a different subject, e.g. *He's the man I met on the plane.* (The subject of *met* is *I*, so it's not necessary to put *who*.)

b Circle the correct relative pronoun. Sometimes both are possible. In which sentence can you leave out the relative pronoun?

- 1 She's the woman (who) / which came into the office yesterday.
- 2 That's the magazine which / that was lying on my desk this morning.
- 3 He's the man whose / who wife speaks five languages.
- 4 I'm the only one here whose / who is concerned about the environment.
- 5 The house where / which I lived as a child is no longer there.
- 6 This is the book which / that I told you about.
- 7 Jane is my friend who / that got married last year.

2 NEW LANGUAGE

c New grammar. Rewrite the sentences to make them more informal. Omit the relative pronoun wherever possible.

- 1 The plate from which you're eating was my grandmother's.
The plate you're eating from was my grandmother's.
- 2 The company for which I work is an advertising agency.
The company _____.
- 3 The man to whom I spoke is the head of my department.
The man _____.
- 4 One of the people with whom I work is a part time model.
One of the people _____.
- 5 The house into which they moved was nearly two hundred years old.
The house _____.
- 6 Her boyfriend is the only person to whom she can turn.
Her boyfriend _____.

d Complete the sentences with *who*, *what*, or *which*. Can you also use *that* in any of the sentences?

- 1 Do you know what you are doing?
- 2 My boyfriend, _____ I've known for a month, is a model.
- 3 We can't come to your party, _____ is a shame.
- 4 My friend wasn't hurt in the crash, _____ was a relief.
- 5 I don't understand _____ you are saying.
- 6 We haven't seen my cousin for ages, _____ is unusual.
- 7 My flat, _____ I bought last year, is in the city centre.

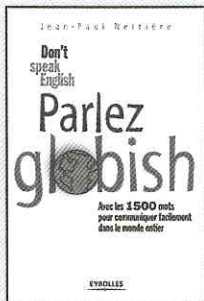
Study Link Student's Book p.144 Grammar Bank 7C

2 READING

a Read the article. Complete it with the missing sentences.

- A He suggests they should make an effort to speak like everybody else to appear less arrogant and more open to doing business.
- B It should not, he insists, be used as a vehicle of culture.
- C In his books 'Don't speak English, Parlez Globish' and 'Découvrez le Globish' Jean Paul Nerrière advocates the use of Globish as the mother tongue of international communication.

■ Globish: the new international language? ■



A French author and ex-vice president of IBM has **come up with** a new reduced form of English to help non English speakers **get by** when they are abroad. ¹

Globish involves a vocabulary limited to 1,500 words. ² It is not aimed at cultural eloquence, Mr Nerrière **points out**, but at 'linguistic efficiency, always, everywhere, with everyone'.

Mr Nerrière originally started his investigations into Globish in an effort to help other Frenchmen and women sitting in business meetings held in English. He advised them to content themselves with Globish instead of trying to master the intricacies of the Queen's English. ³

Mr Nerrière says that Anglo Saxons tend to **stand out** as strange in international business meetings. This is due to their refusal to use the elementary English adopted by colleagues from other countries. ⁴ He warns that commercial ventures could depend upon the mastery of Globish: 'If you lose a contract to a rival because you're speaking an English that no one apart from another Anglophone understands, then you've got a problem.'

Quick to dispel fears that Globish will mean the end of other languages, Mr Nerrière recommends that it should only be used in international exchanges. ⁵ In other words he believes we should **carry on** learning languages to read the great literary works of Molière, Shakespeare, and Cervantes. He claims, however, that the best language to talk about the price of steel in China is Globish.

D Now his globalized version of English is so common, he says, that Britons, Americans, and other English speakers should learn it too.

E Other features include short sentences, an absence of idiomatic expressions, and extensive hand gestures to get the point across.

b Tick (✓) the true sentences about Globish.

- 1 It was invented by a Frenchman.
- 2 It has a large vocabulary.
- 3 The sentences are very short.
- 4 It uses a lot of idioms and phrasal verbs.
- 5 It relies heavily on body language.
- 6 It is useful for communication in business.
- 7 It is not intended for writing novels.
- 8 It should be used in the place of all other languages.

c Look at the **highlighted** verbs and expressions. What do you think they mean? Check with your dictionary.

3 VOCABULARY prefixes

a Use a prefix from list A and a word from list B to complete the sentences.

A auto ~~ex~~ mis micro under post over semi

B ~~husband~~ spell graduate final
biography wave cooked sleep

- 1 I still get on well with my ex-husband even though we broke up five years ago.
- 2 Matt sent back his chicken because it was _____.
- 3 You can read all about the actor's life in his _____.
- 4 I was thrilled when my son reached the _____ of the tennis tournament.
- 5 My sister did her _____ course at Harvard in the USA.
- 6 Lots of English words are very easy to _____.
- 7 I very rarely _____ – only when I'm really tired or have stayed up late.
- 8 She usually cooks her meals in a _____ oven.

b Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in **bold**.

- The risk of having a heart attack is greater if you are stressed, overworked, and you smoke. **work**
- My boyfriend is very _____. He never wants to go to parties or go out with my friends. **social**
- My mum sometimes buys _____ meals if she's late home from work. **cook**
- My dictionary is a _____ one. There are translations for all the words. **lingual**
- Unfortunately, I _____ the directions and I went to the wrong office. **understand**
- My sister is much better at _____ than I am – she can do three or four things at the same time! **task**



4 PRONUNCIATION word stress

a Underline the primary stress in these words. How many have the primary stress on the prefix?

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1 overpaid | 5 subtitles |
| 2 antibiotics | 6 redecorate |
| 3 post-impressionist | 7 autopilot |
| 4 ex-smoker | 8 mispronounce |

b Practise saying the words in a.

Phrasal verbs in context

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb from File 7.

end go pick take

- I can't stop now. I'm on my way to the school to _____ up the children.
- Why don't you _____ up yoga? It would help you to relax.
- What's _____ on here? Why is everybody looking out of the window?
- I always wanted to be a vet but I _____ up as an accountant!

More Words to Learn

Write translations and try to remember the words.

Word	Pronunciation	Translation
cloak (<i>noun</i>)	/kləʊk/	
cab (<i>noun</i>)	/kæb/	
plastic surgery (<i>noun</i>)	/'plæstɪk 'sɜ:dʒəri/	
slang (<i>noun</i>)	/slæŋ/	
tile (<i>noun</i>)	/taɪl/	
genuine (<i>adj</i>)	/'dʒenjuɪn/	
capture (<i>verb</i>)	/'kæptʃə/	
flee (<i>verb</i>)	/fli:/	
leave a tip (<i>verb</i>)	/li:v ə tɪp/	
on the spot	/ɒn ðə spɒt/	

LISTENING

- Listen to a radio programme and write down two advantages the speaker mentions of Esperanto compared to other languages.
- Listen again and complete the notes. You sometimes have to write more than one word.

Esperanto

Spoken today by ¹ _____ people.

Developed at the end of the ² _____ by L.L. Zamenhof.

He thought that a common language would help to avoid conflict and prevent ³ _____. He thought that existing languages were ⁴ _____ for people to learn. He proposed a new language where everyone would be ⁵ _____.

Esperanto has five vowels and ⁶ _____ consonants with phonetic ⁷ _____ and logical grammar rules. For an English speaker, Esperanto is ⁸ _____ easier to learn than Russian.

In 1911 there were plans to replace ⁹ _____ with Esperanto.

It is spoken as a second language in ¹⁰ _____ countries.

Esperanto is on the school curriculum in China, Hungary, and ¹¹ _____.

In British schools Esperanto is being used to help students learn ¹² _____.

- Listen again with the tapescript on p.79 and try to guess the meaning of any words that you don't know. Then check in your dictionary.

Study Link MultiROM

1 THE INTERVIEW

Complete the mini dialogues with a word from the list.

around cross mainstream snap somehow whether

- 1 A Where on earth have you been?
B I'm not sure what happened but _____ we got lost on the way.
- 2 A How come you've got so many holiday photos?
B Oh, I just _____ anything I think looks interesting.
- 3 A Have you bought a dress for the wedding?
B No, I'm waiting to see _____ or not my sister will lend me one.
- 4 A What sort of music do you listen to?
B Mostly _____ groups, pop and rock, that sort of thing.
- 5 A What kind of dog is that?
B It looks like a _____ between a poodle and a fox terrier.
- 6 A When did the Rolling Stones release their first single?
B It must have been ages ago. They've been _____ for years.

2 IN THE STREET

Complete the missing words.

- 1 That shop sells stationery and st _____ like that.
- 2 The employees are frustrated because the manager didn't g _____ with their idea.
- 3 I don't know what his job is but I think it's something to d _____ with animals.
- 4 The last sentence in your report doesn't make s _____.
- 5 Our products are sold w _____, not just in this country.

3 READING

a Read the article and write two words for each category that have recently come into the language.

- 1 Internet criminals _____
- 2 blogging _____
- 3 health _____
- 4 the environment _____

b Read the article again and complete the definitions with a word from a.

- 1 A _____ shows that there is going to be an ecological disaster.
- 2 Someone does a _____ to make their blog look more modern and attractive.
- 3 You must be careful never to disclose your bank details to _____.
- 4 A person who is obsessed with having a suntan all year round suffers from _____.
- 5 A _____ is an extinct Chinese dolphin.
- 6 A person who is obsessed with practising yoga to stay fit suffers from _____.

7 If you suspect a group of _____ has accessed your computer, call the **cybercops**.

8 He wrote a blog for two months or so, but then he got _____ and gave up.

c Underline five words you don't know. Use your dictionary to look up their meaning and pronunciation.

How words change with the times

Every year that passes throws up new ideas, experiences, and inventions for which no name has previously existed. However, the gap is soon filled and a name is allocated to the new concept. Words are a language's response to circumstances and nowhere can this be seen more clearly than in the field of technology.

First we had 'Internet', then we had words like 'download' and 'online'. Now, however, an increasing amount of 'e-fraud' is committed over the Internet and a number of words have been coined. Apart from the 'cybercops' out looking for 'cybercriminals', a number of more specific terms are used to define the bad guys. 'Crackers' (a cross between 'computers' and 'hackers') are people who break into a computer system for illegal purposes, whereas 'scammers' try to trick people into disclosing their bank details (a 'scam' means a trick). These are just a few of the multitude of new words in the world of e-crime.

Continuing on the theme of computing, the success of the 'blog' has meant that a number of blog-related terms have entered the language. First of all, there's 'blogfade' to illustrate how people may lose interest in their blog so it disappears. At some point bloggers will have to change and update the style of their blog in the form of a 'blogover'. 'Blogover' comes from the word 'makeover' which means to update your image.

But it is not only in the world of Information Technology (IT) that new words are being coined. In the current debate on healthy eating and body weight, one of the chief concerns is obviously the illness, anorexia. The suffix *-rexia* has given rise to a number of new concepts related to appearance and the desire to be slim. The term 'tanorexia' is used for an obsession with maintaining a suntan all year round, usually by using a sunbed, while 'yogarexia' is an obsession with practising yoga in order to stay fit.

Another area of strong debate is that of the future of the planet. One of the most serious effects of climate change is the number of species becoming extinct. A 'baiji' is a Chinese freshwater dolphin which has now died out and, because of the publicity surrounding this word, has recently entered the English language, though five years ago nobody would have known what it was. And finally, something whose poor state of health is an indicator of imminent eco-disaster, for example glaciers or a species, has become known as a 'climate canary'. This is because in the past canaries were used in mines to detect the presence of dangerous gases. ■

Listening

1
A

Dialogue 1

Interviewer Blanche, can you tell us how you met your partner?

Blanche Yes, I met Kevin on the Internet. I sent my profile to one of those Internet dating agencies just for a laugh, you know, and I got an email straight back from a guy in Brighton who said he wanted to meet me. He was a psychologist as it happens.

Interviewer So, where was your first date?

Blanche The first time we met face-to-face was in Brighton. I drove down to the coast from London, where I live, and we had lunch in a café by the beach. We got on really well that day and we've never looked back since. It is a bit hard though, having a long-distance relationship, but we do manage to see each other most weekends.

Dialogue 2

Interviewer Julian, where did you meet your partner?

Julian My brother, whose name's Daniel, introduced me to Rachel because he was going out with her best friend Sarah at the time. When Daniel and Sarah split up, Rachel and me stayed together. We've been together for nearly six years now.

Interviewer Where was your first date?

Julian Our first date wasn't very private, because we went out with my brother and Sarah. The four of us went to see a film at the cinema together, but someone stole Rachel's bag when we came out of the cinema, and so we spent the rest of the evening in the police station! Our second date was much better – we went out to dinner on our own and we had a really good time. It just went on from there really.

1
B

Presenter On today's programme we have historian Harriet Thistlewaite with us to talk about superstitions. Harriet, where do superstitions come from?

Harriet Well, the definition of a superstition is 'an irrational belief' and we have to go back hundreds of years to find an explanation for their existence. Sometimes the reason behind a superstition is even more bizarre than the superstition it tries to explain. Take the case of the black cat for example. Most people know that it's supposed to be a sign of bad luck if a black cat walks in front of you, but they probably can't tell you why. Well, the reason is that in the Middle Ages black cats became associated with witches and they were said to possess evil spirits so obviously people thought that if a black cat crossed your path that this was not very good news at all.

Presenter So the black cat superstition has been with us for a long time?

Harriet Yes, but not as long as the idea that we shouldn't walk under ladders. Apart from the practical reasons for not doing this – obviously somebody might drop some paint on your head while you are walking underneath – there is a more mysterious explanation which goes right back to Ancient Egypt. The shape of a triangle was sacred to the Egyptians and it was considered very bad luck to, as it were, break the 'power' of this shape. People believed that if you walked under a ladder, the power of

the triangle would break and you would lose your protection against bad luck.

Presenter Are there any superstitions about good luck?

Harriet Yes, there are. You know how people often touch wood or knock on wood when they're talking about something they hope will or won't happen in the future?

Presenter Yes, in fact I quite often do it myself.

Harriet Well, in the Middle Ages people used to knock on trees to call the good spirits to protect them against misfortune. So that's where that superstition comes from.

Presenter We've just got time for one more.

Harriet Well, in fact I'd say that the most common superstition concerning good luck is the habit we have of saying 'Bless you' when someone sneezes. Again this dates back to the Middle Ages when the great plague – which was a terrible infectious illness – was sweeping through Europe. Most people who caught the plague died and one of the first symptoms was sneezing. When sufferers began sneezing violently, it was considered a sign that they might be going to die and so the Pope passed a law requiring people to bless the person who was sneezing.

1
C

Speaker 1 The only time I've had to use first aid was on a skiing trip to Switzerland. I'd gone with a few friends, and we were having a great time until disaster struck. One of my more adventurous friends was skiing down one of those slopes which is really only for experts and he suddenly lost control and crashed into a tree. So we skied over to him as quickly as possible and found he was obviously in a lot of pain and his leg was at a really strange angle. The only thing we could do was to put snow around his leg to stop the pain and call the emergency services to take him to hospital for an X-ray. In fact, his leg was broken in three places.

Speaker 2 A few years ago I remember I was playing football with some friends in the park and I suddenly had a terrible nosebleed. The blood was just dripping from my nose. I tried stuffing my nose with tissues but it didn't make any difference. One of my friends told me to press ice on my face, but of course we didn't have any ice there. Then another friend told me to pinch the soft part of my nose just under the bridge and eventually it would stop. I didn't really believe him, but I tried it and it worked!

Speaker 3 I've never given first aid but I have received it. I was at our annual company conference, and we'd been standing up for about half an hour when I started feeling very hot and dizzy. I took off my jacket, but it didn't help. Suddenly everything went black and the next thing I knew I was lying on the floor surrounded by worried faces looking at me. My colleagues then helped me to sit on a chair and they put my legs up on another chair and after a while I started to feel a bit better and then I went outside for some fresh air. The whole thing was terribly embarrassing, and everyone kept on asking me if I was all right for the rest of the day.

**2
A**

Although Spain is a big country with strong regional differences, I think there are certain characteristics that can be applied to the majority of Spaniards. For example, people from Spain are generally very lively and friendly. We love meeting friends either to eat or just to have a drink – any excuse is good to get out of the house. I think Spaniards are also extremely hard-working. People who think that the Spanish work shorter hours and have a siesta every day may be surprised to know that the reality is very different.

On the negative side Spaniards can be a little unreliable. They are often late and a bit too easy-going. For many people, appearances are really important and people will often judge you by how you dress or how much money you seem to have. Also, Spaniards are sometimes suspicious of foreign customs. This is probably because we are so proud of our country and culture, especially our cuisine, and we won't consider other ways of doing things.

Personally, I think I'm a lively, sociable person and I must admit I *am* often late if I'm meeting friends, but at the same time I'm very reliable at work and I certainly work hard. So in that sense I suppose I am quite typical.

**2
B**

Amelia Earhart first saw a plane at a fair when she was 11 years old, but apparently it didn't attract her attention at all. However, a few years later she went with a friend to a flying exhibition in Toronto. She and her friend were standing in a field, and the pilot of one of the planes saw the two girls and he flew really close to them to try and scare them. But Amelia wasn't frightened, and in fact, from that moment on, she knew that she wanted to fly.

But it wasn't easy for her. First she had to work hard doing temporary jobs in order to pay for flying lessons. Her instructor was another pioneer woman pilot, called Anita Snook. Six months later Amelia had saved enough money to buy her own plane, which was bright yellow and which she nicknamed 'The Canary'. Finally, after two and a half years of classes, she was awarded her pilot's licence.

Amelia's dream was always to fly solo across the Atlantic. She had already flown across the Atlantic once before, but she didn't enjoy it, as she was only a passenger. This experience made her even more determined to do the flight herself, and finally in 1932 she became the first woman to do it. She then started planning a flight around the world. Her first attempt had to be abandoned because the plane was damaged. Then Amelia and her co-pilot set off again from Miami on 1st June 1937. It looked as if they were going to make it, but when they only had 7,000 kilometres to go, contact with the plane was lost. Neither Amelia, nor her co-pilot, nor the plane were ever found.

**2
C**

Brian So Kate, what's the best book you've ever read?

Kate It's never easy to say what the best book is, is it? But definitely one of the most shocking books I've read recently was Lionel Shriver's *We need to talk about Kevin*. It's about a couple who have a little boy, and he turns out to be an awful child, every parent's worst nightmare. In fact at the end of the book he's in a special home for dangerous children. I won't tell you exactly what he did because it would spoil the whole story,

but the end is more shocking than you can possibly imagine as you're reading the book. Another interesting thing is that everything is written from the point of view of the mother, and you're not always sure whether to believe her or not. It's a great book – I'd definitely recommend it.

Brian How about you, Sarah?

Sarah One of my all-time favourite books is Barbara Kingsolver's *The Poisonwood Bible*. It's about a missionary family who travel to a village in Africa, in the Congo, and they spend some years living there. I love novels where you also learn something, and the background to this story is really the history of the Congo, I mean true events which happened there, and it helps you to understand many of the problems the country faces even today. Each chapter of the book is written from the point of view of a different member of the family, and that makes it easier to understand how each one of them is feeling during the events that happen. It's a great book. You must read it.

Brian Janet?

Janet Yes, I think my favourite book is Tracy Chevalier's first novel, *Girl with a Pearl Earring*. It's about a girl called Greta who goes to serve in the house of the great painter, Vermeer. The story is full of the rich colours and deep emotions typical of an artist's studio. I liked the book much more than the film, I must say, even though the photography was absolutely fantastic.

**3
A**

Speaker 1 This happened to a friend of mine. It was quite late, about half past eleven, and he was walking home from work, and he went through a park. This guy came up to him and told him to give him all his money, which he did. Then the guy asked him for his mobile phone, but my friend refused to give it to him and the guy got out a knife and stabbed him with it. By the time my friend got to hospital he was bleeding very heavily, and later the doctors told him he'd been really lucky. It just shows it's better not to try to be brave if something like that happens to you.

Speaker 2 I don't know why, but I always seem to have my wallet stolen when I'm abroad. I guess it's because I'm speaking English and I probably look like a tourist, or something. The last time I was in the centre of Barcelona in a very touristy street called the Ramblas, but luckily I wasn't carrying much in my wallet, just a few coins. I've got so used to it now that I always take my personal documents out of my wallet and leave them in the hotel. That way, if I'm robbed, I only lose a bit of money.

Speaker 3 I did something really stupid once. I was travelling home by train and I was really tired, and I fell asleep. Unfortunately, I left my bag with all my things in it on the floor, and I didn't notice when someone took it. I realized what had happened when I woke up and as soon as the train arrived in the station I went straight to the police. Amazingly, the police found my bag, but of course my purse, my phone, and my MP3 player were all missing. I can't believe I was so stupid!

3
B

Paul Well, the weather's fantastic at the moment, isn't it? Can you remember us ever having a barbecue in the garden in April?

Judith Yeah, it's nice to feel warm for a change instead of sitting in front of the fire all winter, but it's a bit worrying too. I mean it's a sign of climate change, isn't it?

Paul Oh, you don't believe all that rubbish, do you? Not even the scientists can agree about it.

Judith Yes, I do believe it, because it's true. Even the government is starting to do something about it.

Paul Like what?

Judith Well, for a start they're trying to limit CO₂ emissions from planes by reducing the number of flights each year.

Paul And how are they going to do that? By putting up the price, I suppose?

Judith Well, yes, I suppose air fares will go up, but I do think it's important that something is being done to solve the problem.

Paul Well, I don't see why I should give up my trips abroad. Perhaps they should be looking at reducing the number of cars on the road, or reducing emissions from factories and big industry. But of course, that's not in their interest, is it? The government doesn't make much profit from low-cost airlines, and so that's why they're blaming them for everything.

Judith I know what you mean. But still, global warming is a serious problem. I think we all have to do our bit to prevent it. You can't just sit back and expect the government to deal with it.

Paul So, what do you think we should do? Sell our cars and cycle to work?

Judith Well, that's certainly one possibility. I think everyone should be trying to save energy and water and just generally be a bit more aware of the problems we're facing. The fact is that in the future millions of people will lose their homes and others will die if global warming continues. We could try to fly less this year and go on holiday in this country instead.

Paul OK, OK Judith, I take your point. Maybe we should do something. But meanwhile let's just enjoy lunch in the garden. Can you pass me another a sausage?

3
C

Presenter And I'd like to welcome Andy Evans, the Director of Extreme Sports United to the programme today. Andy, your speciality is bungee jumping, isn't it?

Andy Yes, it is.

Presenter Can you tell us something about bungee jumping? Whose idea was it?

Andy Well, bungee jumping has been around for centuries, but it wasn't discovered in the West until relatively recently. It originated on the South Pacific island of Vanuatu, where young men known as 'land divers' used to perform the ritual of jumping from tall wooden platforms with vines tied to their ankles.

Presenter And when did 'land diving' actually become a sport?

Andy Well, the first modern bungee jump happened about 20 years later in Bristol in the UK. A man called Chris Baker used a kind of elastic rope to make a bungee – that's the name of the rope – and four members of the Dangerous Sports Club made a jump from the Clifton Suspension Bridge on 1st April 1979. They were arrested almost immediately afterwards, but people continued jumping off bridges, especially in the States. For example people did bungee jumps from the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco. In fact some of these jumps were sponsored by American

television and so this brought the concept of bungee jumping to the public eye and then of course lots of people wanted to try it themselves.

Presenter How dangerous is bungee jumping? I mean have people been killed while they were bungee jumping?

Andy Actually there have been relatively few fatalities considering the number of successful jumps that have taken place. By far the most important thing is to make sure the bungee – the rubber rope – is the right length. The most common cause of death is using a bungee which is too long, but in most cases the calculations and fittings are double-checked before each jump.

Presenter How does it actually feel doing a bungee jump?

Andy Well, many people say they love the feeling of falling so fast, but personally the bit I really like best is when the bungee reaches its full extent and then you fly back upwards again. You just can't beat that feeling of flying back up after you've nearly hit the ground.

4
A

OK, if I can have your attention, please. Good morning, everybody. My name's Sam, I'm a firefighter, and I'm here today to give you some tips on how to prevent house fires. I'll also be telling you the best way of getting out of a fire, if you ever happen to be trapped in one.

Most fires in the home happen while people are sleeping. One of the most important steps you can take to protect your family is to install a smoke alarm on each floor of your house. Once you've got your smoke alarm installed and working, you should make an escape plan with your family to make sure everyone knows how to get out. Of course, there are other precautions you can take. The most common causes of fatal fires in the home are tobacco and smoking products, so it's best to avoid smoking in the bedroom. It's also important to keep matches and lighters out of reach of children, preferably in a locked cupboard. Never leave food that's cooking unattended, especially hot oil if you're frying.

As well as preventing fires in the home, you also need to know what to do if a fire *does* break out. If you get trapped in your home by smoke or flames, close all doors, and stuff towels or clothing under the doors to keep smoke out. Cover your nose and mouth with a damp cloth to protect your lungs. If you have to escape through a smoky area, remember that cleaner air is always nearer the floor, so you'll need to crawl out on all fours. Finally, and very importantly, if a fire breaks out, do *not* try to rescue pets or possessions. There isn't time to do this – you must get out as soon as possible. Once you *have* got out, do *not* go back in for any reason. Firefighters have a better chance of rescuing people who are trapped than you do.

OK, any questions?

4
B

Speaker 1 I think one of the most stupid arguments I've ever had was over a pen. Looking back, I can't believe I got angry for such a pathetic reason, but at the time I suppose it must have been important to me. I can remember being totally fed up that I was always buying nice new pens and they kept on disappearing. So when I saw a colleague in my office using a pen just like the one I'd just bought, but which I couldn't find, I accused her of taking mine. She got really angry and said I was accusing her of stealing, and we had a terrible argument. We've never really spoken to each

other since then, unless it's absolutely necessary for work, even though I have apologized. And of course a couple of days after we had our argument, I found my pen in one of my drawers. I felt so stupid.

Speaker 2 You know, people are right when they say you should never get involved in your children's arguments. I lost a very good friend because our children had a fight one day in the swimming pool. They must have been about five at the time, and her son was trying to pull my son under water. Eventually my son got fed up and turned round and scratched her son really badly on his chest. My friend was really angry and she told me my son wasn't normal. That made me furious and I said some awful things about *her* son, and that was the last time we spoke to each other. The end of a good friendship.

Speaker 3 The only time I've been involved in an argument which got out of hand was when I was about 12. A school friend accused me of copying her homework, which I hadn't. And she made this accusation in front of the whole class. I was so angry I felt like hitting her, but fortunately I managed to control myself and I just left the classroom until I calmed down. Later she came to find me to apologize, and I felt quite relieved. I guess we must have forgiven each other fairly quickly, because we kept on walking to school together.

4
C

Emma Jerry, have you seen this study about women marrying people who look like their fathers?

Jerry No, I haven't. What does it say?

Emma Well, it says that a lot of women look for a boyfriend or husband with a similar face to their father's, but only if they had a really good relationship with their father when the woman was a child.

Jerry Yeah? And how did they find that out?

Emma Well, it says here that what they did first was measure the faces of the women's fathers and then they asked the women to look at photos of 15 young men and choose the ones they found particularly attractive.

Jerry But the men in the photos would have been much younger than their fathers, surely?

Emma Yes, of course they were. But the women could only see their eyes, nose, and mouth – so it wasn't so easy to tell their ages.

Jerry What happened then?

Emma Then the scientists compared the measurements of the fathers' faces to the measurements of the men's faces that the woman found attractive. They discovered that women who had good relationships with their fathers chose men whose nose, eyes, and eyebrows were very similar to their fathers'.

Jerry Really?

Emma Yes. It says that Gwyneth Paltrow, the actress, and Stella McCartney, Paul McCartney's daughter, both had an excellent relationship with their fathers when they were children and they've both married men who look like their father.

Jerry I'm not completely convinced by this theory. I mean, I don't look anything like your dad, do I? Did you have a good relationship with him when you were a child?

Emma Yes, very good.

Jerry There you are then. So the theory doesn't work for you.

Emma Or maybe I just didn't meet anyone who looked like my dad!

5
A

Speaker 1 I'll never forget the first time I saw a band play live. I was at Leeds University at the time and The Who actually came to play at the university. The atmosphere was electric and the hall was absolutely packed. I was standing right at the front, not far away from Pete Townshend, the guitarist. They played some great tracks and the crowd went wild during *My Generation*. It was amazing. I enjoyed it so much that I didn't want it to end.

Speaker 2 I think the best group of all time was Nirvana, though they weren't around for very long. I mean they were huge in the early nineties, but then they broke up in 1994 when the lead singer Kurt Cobain died. But even though they weren't together for long their music is still very popular today. I read an article in the papers the other day which said their single *Smells like Teen Spirit* is considered by music critics to be one of the greatest rock songs of all time, and people still vote for it as their favourite single. And I think people will always remember Nirvana because they really started the 'grunge' movement, and that had a huge effect on rock music all over the world.

Speaker 3 Whenever I hear the theme tune to the film *Titanic – My Heart Will Go On* – sung by Celine Dion, it always puts me in a really bad mood. When I was at school we were planning a Christmas concert for our parents, and I'd just learned to play the tune on the flute. Anyway, I volunteered to play it in the concert but unfortunately I got incredibly nervous when I went out on stage in front of all the parents, and I played it really, really badly. Now, every time I hear that song, I just remember how embarrassed I felt.

5
B

Presenter Hello and welcome to today's programme where we're going to look at a surprising new trend – sleep therapy. Journalist Nick Parker has been investigating. Nick what exactly is sleep therapy?

Nick Scientists who have been studying sleep have found that people who don't get enough sleep are less efficient at work and more likely to take time off sick. So sleep therapy is something that has evolved to help these people who are sleep deprived by offering them the opportunity to get some extra rest. The places which are offering sleep therapy are mainly spas, and in many big cities worldwide they've opened special 'sleep spas'. These are places where stressed business executives can have a nap whenever they need one. There are two very well-known sleep spa chains in New York, one called Yelo and one called Metronaps, but more sleep spas are opening all the time.

Presenter So what happens when you go to one of these spas?

Nick Well, in Yelo you're taken to a private little space called a 'pod'. The pod is hexagonal, I mean it's got six sides, and it contains a very comfortable leather reclining chair and a blanket, and the lighting is really soft, to encourage you to relax. Metronaps is quite similar but you lie in a chair which has a sort of spherical hood a bit like what they have in hairdressers'. So in both places you can have a comfortable nap in total privacy.

Presenter How long do people usually spend in these sleep spas?

Nick Well, in both Yelo and Metronaps a session lasts twenty minutes, but of course you can book more than one if you think you need it.

Presenter Is it expensive? Do you know how much a session costs?

Nick It's somewhere between 12 and 15 dollars a session.

5
C

And now it's time for your best news stories of the week.

Monday's story. This happened in Kent in the south of England. A woman went to the supermarket, and she had a bag of old clothes to throw in the recycling bin. But after she'd thrown them in, she decided that she'd made a mistake and she wanted to keep them, but when she tried to rescue the items she got stuck in the bin with only her legs visible from outside. Luckily someone saw her and called the fire brigade, who came and rescued her. So there's a lesson there, be careful before you throw things into a recycling bin.

Tuesday's story. A bank clerk accidentally gave a customer nearly £2 million on Tuesday when he made a mistake with her deposit. When Jenny Woollvin went to her local bank to pay a fifty-pound cheque into her account, she decided to check her balance at the same time. To her surprise, she found she was a millionaire! When the clerk was filling in the form to pay in the £50 he accidentally put part of her account number into the space where the amount goes – so he had given her £1,761,000. Unfortunately for Jenny the error was discovered and the money instantly disappeared.

Our next story happened in Bristol on Wednesday. A postman saw two men who were mugging a woman, and ran to her defence. He managed to hit one of the muggers with his heavy mailbag – but then he discovered that in fact they were actors, and were filming a scene for a TV series. A BBC spokesman said that no one was hurt. Thursday's story...

6
A

In fact it was the Russians and not the Americans who won the space race in the 60s by sending the first man into space. And that man was Yuri Gagarin.

Yuri was born on March 9th, 1934 in a small village called Klushino. As a child Yuri was intelligent and hard-working. He started taking flying lessons while he was at college, and everyone soon realized that flying came to him naturally. In 1955, he joined the Soviet Air Force and he was given a special position as a test pilot – that is he had to fly new and experimental aircraft.

In 1960, Yuri Gagarin was chosen with 19 other cosmonauts for the Soviet space programme. He had to go through a very tough and difficult training period, when he took part in a series of experiments to test how strong he was physically and mentally. Yuri got top marks from the instructors. They said that they admired his 'bright mind and quick reactions'.

He was only told that he had been chosen as the pilot of the proposed space flight three days before it actually happened. Then on April 12th, 1961 at 9.07 Moscow time, 27-year-old Gagarin left the Earth in the Soviet spaceship, Vostok 1. He took exactly 108 minutes to complete his trip, which was a complete success. When he returned to Earth, Gagarin had to eject from the capsule at an altitude of approximately seven kilometres in order to land safely.

After the flight, Gagarin became an instant, worldwide celebrity, and he travelled all over the world giving talks and conferences. He became Deputy Training Director at the cosmonaut facility which had trained him, and he also decided to requalify as a fighter pilot with the Air Force. However, tragically in March 1968 during a routine training flight, the plane he was piloting crashed for some unknown reason and both Gagarin and his instructor were killed. Since his death, Gagarin seems to have been forgotten by everyone – but not by the Russians. In his home country several streets have been named after him, and he is buried in the walls of the Kremlin on Red Square.

6
B

Speaker 1 My favourite city is in central Europe on the banks of the Vltava River. It's one of the three Imperial Cities together with Vienna and Budapest, and it's well known for its architecture and historical importance. The Hradčany Castle in the district of the same name overlooks the city centre, and the main square is called Wenceslaus Square. Culturally, it's famous as the birthplace of Kafka, Dvorak, and Smetana.

Speaker 2 The most beautiful city I've ever visited is on the Pacific coast of Canada. It's surrounded by water on three sides, and has the Coast Mountain Range on the other. There's a large island opposite the city where Canadians often go on holiday. It also has the largest urban park in North America, called Stanley Park, which has a zoo, a marine science centre, and famous gardens containing native trees. It's known as one of the cities in the world with the highest quality of life.

Speaker 3 My favourite city is the capital of a South American country. It's on the banks of the Rio de la Plata and is famous for being the birthplace of the tango. It's one of the world's busiest ports and the residents often refer to themselves as Porteños. The main square is called the Plaza de Mayo, and one of this city's streets, the Avenida 9 de Julio is said to be the widest boulevard in the world. Although it's not in Europe, it actually feels quite European – bits of it remind me of Paris and other bits of Italy. In fact one of the districts is called Palermo Viejo, like the capital of Sicily.

6
C

Simon Hey Maggie, have you seen these inventions?

Maggie No. Let me have a look.

Simon They're really funny.

Maggie Oh yes. Oh look, that one's useful, isn't it?

Simon Yes, it's always too hot when you take it out of the saucepan, isn't it?

Maggie Yes, and you can't take the top off straight away. I think that could be handy. I'd quite like to have one.

Simon Oh and look at these.

Maggie What are they?

Simon Oh, they've got a light to help you see when you go to the bathroom!

Maggie Oh, I think they're great! You wouldn't have to wake everyone up any more.

Simon How about this one?

Maggie What's that? Do you think it keeps it cold?

Simon Yes, it looks like that's what it's for. To keep it cold when you go for a picnic.

Maggie It could be useful I suppose. Oh! Look at this one! How silly!

Simon You mean you never get it all over your face?

Maggie No, I don't actually. I never wear the stuff! But I know it can be difficult to put on sometimes.

Simon What's that box for?

Maggie I don't know. What are they doing?

Simon I know! Those are onions! It's to stop you crying when you chop them up. What a good idea!

Maggie It can't possibly work, though. I find the best thing is to open the window and get a bit of fresh air.

Simon Yes, I suppose so. Look at the last one!

Maggie Oh, that's ridiculous! How on earth can he ride it?

Simon I've got no idea! I can't work out how the wheel goes round.

Maggie No. Good point. I really can't see how it would work.

Simon They're good though, aren't they?

Maggie Absolutely fantastic! I love them.

7 A

Max So what annoys you about my family then?

Ella Are you really sure you want to talk about this?

Max Yes, why not? What's the problem? They're not that bad, are they?

Ella No, of course not, but I've got a different perspective, haven't I?

Max Oh, come on! I'd really like to know what you think.

Ella Well, all right then.

Max What about my Mum?

Ella Well, I think she's really nice...

Max But...

Ella But she drives me mad when I'm cooking. I mean, if she wants to help, that's great, but I wish she wouldn't keep complaining that I haven't got any sharp knives or anything. I'm quite happy with my house and the way it looks so I wish she wouldn't criticize all the time!

Max Well, I don't think she's that bad, I mean, I think she just wants to help...

Ella Yes, and I'm grateful for her help, but not for her comments OK? That's just how I feel, all right.

Max Right. OK. What about Dad?

Ella Well, he's not really interested in anyone else, is he? I mean, if he's happy then that's fine, and if he's not, well, everyone else has to make sure that he's all right.

Max I don't think that's very fair. He's not well, is he? And he gets tired quickly and...

Ella You asked me to tell you what I think, so I'm telling you, OK? I just don't think it's right that we all have to go running around after your dad when there are other people to think about. I mean there are the kids to worry about, too. OK, it's your turn now.

Max What?

Ella To tell me about my family.

Max Well after what you've said I don't know where to start! Well, really, your Mum can be quite unbearable...

7 B

Speaker 1 Oh, I'm hopeless with adverts! I only remember them if I recognize the songs. One I do remember though was a Levi's advert from years ago. It showed quite a sophisticated-looking girl returning home to her planet from a trip to Earth where she'd bought these jeans. The best thing about it was the soundtrack which was the number one hit *Spaceman* by Babylon Zoo, I think. This song was perfect because it speeded up and slowed down in different places, so it sounded quite futuristic, just like the images on the advert.

Speaker 2 I think the adverts are only worth watching if there's actually something nice to see on them. My favourite was the Nespresso one with George Clooney. In the advert he walks into a Nespresso shop – you know, where you can make yourself a coffee, and while he's making his coffee he overhears an ambiguous conversation between two girls who are drinking Nespresso. The conversation could be about him, or could be about the coffee. He hears things like 'dark', 'strong', 'mysterious', 'with an intense body'.

In the end he goes up and asks them if they're talking about the coffee and they say, 'Yes. I love it!'

Speaker 3 My favourite ad has got to be the one where that Audi climbs up a ski jump. I honestly thought this was a trick, until one of my friends told me that the car actually did that in real life. Apparently the ski jump is in Finland, and when I looked on the Internet to check this out, I discovered that the new ad is a remake of a previous one Audi made in 1986. It's really impressive, though, and I think it caught a lot of people's attention when it came out.

7 C

Presenter Today we have with us linguist Nick Harper to tell us a bit about the forgotten language of Esperanto. Nick, whatever happened to Esperanto? Does anyone speak it nowadays?

Nick Well, yes they do actually. There are an estimated 1.6 million speakers of Esperanto in the world today.

Presenter That's amazing. So tell us something about the history of the language.

Nick Well, it was developed at the end of the nineteenth century by a Polish doctor called Ludovic Lazarus Zamenhof. His idea was that people of different countries could communicate in a common language. He thought this would help to avoid conflict between nations and prevent wars.

Presenter But why invent a new language? Why not convert one of the existing ones?

Nick Well, Zamenhof thought that the major languages of the day – French, German, Russian, and English – were too difficult for people to learn. He also believed that a native speaker would always have the advantage in a discussion with non-native speakers. So that's why he proposed a *new* language where everyone would be equal. That language was Esperanto.

Presenter So, Esperanto is easier to learn than other languages?

Nick Yes, much easier. It's an artificial language made up of five vowels and 23 consonants with phonetic spelling, logical grammar rules, and regular verb endings. Experts say that for an English speaker, Esperanto is five times easier to learn than French or Spanish, ten times easier than Russian, and 20 times easier than Chinese or Arabic.

Presenter It sounds perfect! So what happened? Why aren't we all speaking Esperanto?

Nick Well, in the beginning Esperanto was quite successful, especially in Central and Eastern Europe and in the old Soviet Union. There was even talk of replacing Chinese with Esperanto after the 1911 revolution in China, but of course this never happened.

Presenter So, who uses Esperanto today?

Nick Well it's still spoken as a second language in about 90 countries of the world, it's on the school curriculum in China, Hungary, and Bulgaria, and it's also being taught in some British schools as a way of helping students to learn other languages.

Presenter Thank you Nick Harper for talking to us.

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008

2012 2011 2010 2009 2008

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press,
or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and
their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only.
Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 451845 1

Printed and bound by Eigel S.A. in Portugal

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to thank: all the teachers and students round the world whose feedback has helped us to shape New English File and also all those at Oxford University Press (both in Oxford and around the world) who have contributed their skills and ideas to producing this course.

Finally very special thanks from Clive to Maria Angeles, Lucia, and Eric, and from Christina to Cristina, for all their help and encouragement. Christina would also like to thank her children Joaquin, Marco, and Krystia for their constant inspiration.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.5 'Casanova's language of love makes way for T-shirts and texts' by Richard Owen.

Reproduced with permission of NI Syndication 2007. p.7 'India goes bananas for 24-hour astrology' by Amrit Dhillon. Reproduced with permission of The Daily Telegraph. p.17 'Airport calls in hunters to remove the hares clogging up its runways' by Richard Owen. Reproduced with permission of NI Syndication 2007. p.21 'The Write Stuff' by Will Pavia. Reproduced with permission of NI Syndication 2007. p.23 'Becoming a flight attendant - the easy way!' factual information from www.easyjet.com/EN/Jobs/Cabin/cabincrew_selection.html. Reproduced by permission of easyJet.

p.45 'Headphones deafen you. Who star tells iPod fans' by Adam Sherwin. Reproduced with permission of NI Syndication 2007. p.60 'Dragon's Den reject celebrates soaring sales of 'worthless' invention' by Dan Newling, 13 August 2007 © Daily Mail. Reproduced with permission. p.65 'Marriage Wreckers' by Sinead McIntyre, 16 May 2005 © Daily Mail. Reproduced with permission. p.67 'Zeta-Jones axed as 'celeb fatigue' hits ads' by Tony Allen-Mills. Reproduced with permission of NI Syndication 2007.

Source: p.33 <http://whatismatt.com/jump-thailand>

The authors and publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs: Advertising Archive p.67, Alamy pp.25 (Vaughan Breaun), 34 (Ian Paterson), 57 (Elizabeth Whiting & Associates), BAA Photolibrary p.27, Camera Press p.14 (Gavin Watson/skinhead, Colin Davey/Teddy boy), Daily Mail p.62 (Harper Collins/Lip Stencil and Onion chopper), DK Images p.7, easyjet p.23, Globish p.71, Honda p.26, Getty Images pp.5 (Louis Fox), 21 (David Levenson/Fay Weldon and Simon Armitage, Rogan Coles/John Mortimer), 45 (Shirlaine Forrest/WireImage), 48 (Serge Krouglikoff), Kobal Collection p.54 (Paramount Television), Popperfoto p.14 (punk, mods), Punchstock pp.4, 38 (woman and map), 65 (Rolf Bruderer), Rex Features pp.14 (Chris Capstick/platform boots), 17, 21 (Sutton-Hibbert/Michael Morpurgo, Ray Tang/Marina Lewycka), 30 (Sipa Press), 38 (Bill Truslow/man gossiping), 43 (Alisdair Macdonald), 53 (Leon Schadeberg) 62 (Slippers, Mono wheel, Simon Jones/Q top, 63 (AD Crollanza), Solo Syndication, p.62 (Egg topper), Trunki p.61

Illustrations by: Ian Baker pp.35, 41, 61. Phil Disley pp.9, 20, 40, 47, 72. Kath Hextall p.16, 32, 49, 52, 56. Marie Helene Jeeves pp.28, 44. Annabel Milne pp.11

Designed by: Bryony Newhouse

Picture research and illustrations commissioned by: Cathy Blackie.



New ENGLISH FILE

The course that gets students talking

Fun, motivating lessons that work

The perfect balance of grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, and skills to help your students use English really effectively.

A complete package for teachers and students

The Teacher's Book gives you the support you need, and all the components work together for more effective learning.

Common European Framework of Reference B2

Workbook

- Lesson by lesson revision and practice.
- More Words to Learn – extra words from the Student's Book.
- Check what you know – grammar revision tables and exercises.

Study Link

Look out for the Study Link logo in the Workbook. This shows you where to find more material for revision and practice.

Website

- Interactive exercises, games, and downloadable activities at:
www.oup.com/elt/englishfile/upper-intermediate

Other components

- Student's Book
- Teacher's Book
- Test and Assessment CD-ROM
- iPack
- Class audio CDs
- DVD
- MultiROM

ish Sounds Pronunciation Chart
d on an original idea and design
aul Seligson and Carmen Dolz

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

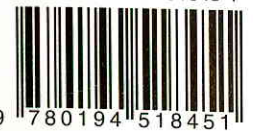


for all your
testing needs
online go to

oxfordenglishtesting.com



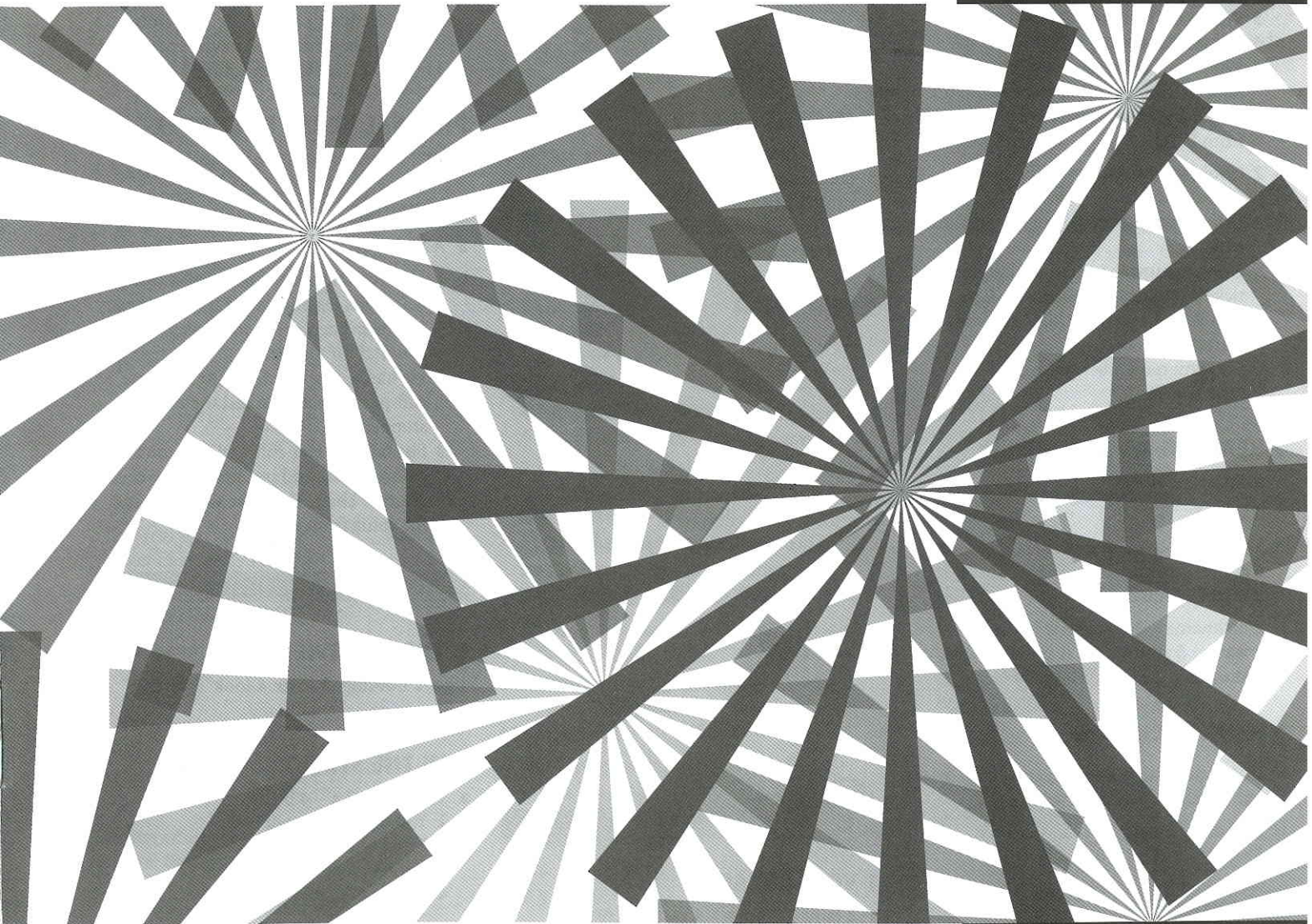
OXFORD ENGLISH
ISBN 978-0-19-451845-1



Clive Oxenden
Christina Latham-Koenig
with Jane Hudson

New **ENGLISH FILE**

**Upper-intermediate
Workbook Key**



OXFORD

**1
A****1 GRAMMAR**

- a 3 Where do you usually go on holiday?
4 ✓
5 What happened at the meeting yesterday?
6 ✓
7 How far is it to the station?
8 How many people came to your party?
9 ✓
10 Why is James driving your car?
11 Can you tell me where the toilets are?
12 How long have you been learning English?
- b 2 d 3 b 4 e 5 a 6 c
- c 2 Who cooks in your family?
3 What happens if I press this button?
4 How long did you spend in Australia last summer?
5 Which do you prefer – tea or coffee?
6 What makes you angry?
7 Who drank / has drunk all the fruit juice I left in the fridge?
8 How long does it take to get to Norwich from here?
- d 2 Could you tell me what the time is, please?
3 Do you remember where we parked the car?
4 Do you know if / whether there are any tickets left for the concert tonight?
5 Can you tell me what time the concert starts?
6 Can you remember when Sally's birthday is?

2 READING & VOCABULARY

- a a dating service
- b 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F
- d 2 trial 3 wary 4 approach 5 register
6 come up with 7 stunning
8 membership card
- e 2 nickname 3 membership card
4 wary 5 approach 6 come up with
7 stunning 8 trial

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a /ə/ rarely, share, their, wear, where
/ɜ:/ learn, prefer, turn, were, work
- b 2 whose 3 how 4 who 5 why
6 what 7 when 8 which

LISTENING

- a 1F 2F 3T 4F 5T 6F 7T 8F

**1
B****1 READING**

- a sport
b 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 loyal 3 reserved 4 wise
5 bad-tempered 6 eccentric
7 easy-going 8 stubborn 9 possessive
- b 2 pessimistic 3 responsible 4 moody
5 reliable 6 forgetful 7 sensitive
8 practical

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a stress on 1st syllable: arrogant, cheerful, loyal, practical
stress on 2nd syllable: adventurous, bad-tempered, impulsive, original
stress on 3rd syllable: easy-going, immature, insincere, open-minded

4 MINI GRAMMAR

- 2 earlier, sooner
3 later, angrier
4 more I practise, better
5 hotter, more difficult
6 more exercise, fitter

5 GRAMMAR

- a 2 so does
3 neither have
4 so is
5 neither do
6 so was
7 so will
8 neither have
- b 1 Did, didn't, did, Is
2 did you, did, are you, am, is it
3 don't you, do you, do, do, couldn't we
4 Are, do you, do, Will

LISTENING

- a 1 Ages 2 spirits 3 Egypt 4 power
5 Middle Ages 6 a tree/trees
7 plague 8 sneezing

**1
C****1 VOCABULARY**

- a 2 faint 3 burn 4 rash 5 swollen
6 cough 7 pain 8 bleeding
- b 2 sore throat 3 flu 4 caught, cold
5 sprained 6 asthma
- c 2 painkillers 3 specialist 4 bandage
5 operation 6 stitches

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 stomach ache 3 swollen 4 blood pressure
5 unconscious 6 wound
- b /ʃ/ chest
/k/ unconscious
/dʒ/ drug
/tʃ/ X-ray

3 READING

- a Don't allow a child with a head injury to sleep.
- b 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 B

4 GRAMMAR

- b 3 arrived 4 ✓ 5 since last October
6 ✓ 7 did you wake up 8 They've only known each other for six months
- c 2 've had 3 've been 4 've been writing
5 've moved out 6 've been living
7 've already unpacked 8 've split up
9 's been travelling 10 haven't managed
11 've met 12 've been seeing 13 've had

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 cut 2 gave 3 call 4 broke 5 chat

LISTENING

- a A2 B1 C3
- b 1 His leg was broken. They put snow round his leg and called the emergency services. Then they took him to hospital for an X-ray.
2 He had a nosebleed. He pinched the soft part of his nose and the bleeding stopped.
3 She fainted. Her colleagues made her sit on a chair and put her legs up on another chair. Then she went outside for some fresh air.

1 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH**1 THE INTERVIEW**

- 1 go 2 nothing 3 sorts 4 look 5 earth
6 life

2 IN THE STREET

- a 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b
- b 1 You can usually tell
2 I told him none whatsoever
3 I don't particularly want
4 will be pretty minimal

3 READING

- a 1 Scorpio 2 Aries 3 Virgo 4 Pisces
5 Libra 6 Taurus 7 Aquarius
8 Capricorn 9 Sagittarius 10 Leo
11 Cancer 12 Gemini

1 GRAMMAR

- a Thailand: Thai, the Thai
 Poland: Polish, Poles / the Polish
 Japan: Japanese, the Japanese
 Brazil: Brazilian, Brazilians
 Greece: Greek, Greeks
 Czech Republic: Czech, Czechs
 Turkey: Turkish, Turks / the Turkish

- b 2 the unemployed
 3 the injured
 4 the disabled
 5 The rich
 6 the blind
 7 The young
 8 the deaf
- c 1 ones 2 one 3 one 4 ones, ones

2 READING

- a 1 D 3 C 4 A 5 B
 b 2 dull 3 neat 4 braces 5 appalled
 6 spiky 7 fitted 8 masterminded
 9 cuffs

3 VOCABULARY

A	C	O	T	T	O	N	G	H
S	W	E	R	T	Y	Y	B	N
D	V	N	E	N	I	L	G	L
N	E	S	E	S	D	O	J	Y
E	L	I	D	C	V	N	K	C
L	V	L	E	A	T	H	E	R
L	E	K	U	C	V	B	N	A
O	T	M	S	W	E	R	T	Y
O	S	D	M	I	N	E	D	B
W	F	G	H	N	C	K	O	F

- b 2 long-sleeved 3 silk 4 old-fashioned
 5 plain
- c 2 dress up 3 hang up 4 fit 5 suits
 6 get changed 7 match

4 PRONUNCIATION

- a /u:/ hood
 /ɪ/ striped
 /ɒ/ short
 /aɪ/ suede

5 GRAMMAR

- 2 ✓
 3 some white leather trousers
 4 some trendy purple glasses
 5 ✓
 6 that tight black Lycra™ T-shirt
 7 ✓
 8 those scruffy old jeans

LISTENING

- a She enjoys meeting new people, she's often late, and she works hard.
 b 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F

1 READING

- a hares and fog
 b 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T
 c 2 capture 3 at dawn 4 inexplicably
 5 drastic measures 6 attempts
 7 be released 8 endangering

2 VOCABULARY

- a Across: 6 luggage 7 crew 8 passengers
 Down: 1 porter 2 airlines 3 departures
 4 arrivals 5 attendant
- b 2 check-in 3 seats 4 passport control
 5 flight 6 took off 7 landing
 8 pick up

3 MINI GRAMMAR

- 2 such an 3 such a long 4 so
 5 so much 6 such 7 so 8 such

4 GRAMMAR

- a 2 Did you have 3 they were waiting in the queue 4 Where was Ewan going
 5 ✓ 6 we got there 7 ✓ 8 ✓
- b 2 had been waiting 3 had had
 4 had picked up 5 had been sitting
 6 hadn't taken off
- c 2 arrived 3 left 4 went 5 got
 6 looked 7 had already checked in
 8 were waiting 9 had given 10 called
 11 had checked in 12 had been waiting

5 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 brought 3 said 4 wrote 5 built
 6 flew 7 won 8 took 9 taught
 10 heard

LISTENING

- a She was the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic. She and her co-pilot disappeared when they were trying to fly round the world.
 b 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T
 8 F 9 T

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 fast 3 carefully 4 badly 5 correctly
 6 safely 7 happily 8 extremely hard
- b 2 My daughter is hardly ever ill.
 3 His parents are retiring next year.
 4 The boy was extremely rude to his teacher.
 5 Luckily we had taken an umbrella.
 6 The police arrived at the bank immediately.
 7 Apparently James is getting divorced.
 8 My brother eats very unhealthily.
- c 2 Although she likes reading a lot, she hardly ever goes to the library.
 3 Unfortunately, I crashed my new car last week.
 4 Ideally, we should leave early tomorrow.
 5 I can hardly understand when people speak English quickly.
 6 My brother nearly forgot his girlfriend's birthday yesterday.
 7 Surprisingly, he never eats fruit.
 8 Luckily, it didn't rain very much at the weekend.

2 VOCABULARY

- 2 lately 3 especially 4 nearly 5 yet
 6 hardly 7 ever 8 near 9 even
 10 specially 11 at the moment
 13 at the end

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a stress on 1st syllable: definitely, fortunately, obviously
 stress on 2nd syllable: apparently, eventually, immediately, incredibly, successfully, surprisingly
 stress on 3rd syllable: accidentally, insecurely

4 READING

- a a 2 b 3 c 2
 b 2 A 3 B 4 E 5 C
 c 1 laptop 2 wrist 3 converted
 4 nocturnal 5 engage

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 back 2 out 3 down 4 behind 5 up

LISTENING

- a 1 C 2 B 3 A
 b 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

2 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH

3
A

1 THE INTERVIEW

- 1 get 2 Otherwise 3 deal 4 sorry
5 team 6 world

2 IN THE STREET

- 2 serious – major
3 Financially – Money-wise
4 in fact – actually

3 READING

- a 1 permanent contract
2 competitive salary
3 excellent travel packages
b 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 d 5 c

1 VOCABULARY

- a 1 burglar 2 hijacker 3 smuggle
4 terrorism 5 vandalism 6 fraud
7 bribery 8 murderer
b Crime Criminal Verb
kidnapping kidnapper to kidnap
blackmail blackmailer to blackmail
drug dealing drug dealer to sell drugs
mugging mugger to mug
rape rapist to rape
theft thief to steal
robbery robber to rob
c 2 robbery 3 hijackers 4 smuggle
5 bribe 6 mugged 7 fraud 8 kidnapper
d 2 arrested 3 charged 4 court
5 investigating 6 acquitted 7 witness
8 commit

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a burgle – murder
manslaughter – court
community – accuse
jury – secure
guilty – kill

3 READING

- a 1 He's a seagull. 2 crisps
b 1B 2E 3A 4C 5D
c 2 spokesperson 3 feast 4 a regular
5 taken advantage of 6 rips
7 fond of 8 brand

4 GRAMMAR

- b 2 had been stolen
3 be caught
4 were questioned
5 were visited
6 has just been arrested
7 is being held
8 will be heard
9 be given
10 will be stolen
c 3 The rapist is known to be a local man.
4 It is understood that the blackmailer is a colleague of the victim.
5 The president's wife is reported to have been kidnapped.
6 The man is expected to be acquitted.
7 It is said that the police are investigating the theft of a painting by Picasso.
8 It is thought that the terrorists are in hiding somewhere in France.
9 An art gallery is reported to have been damaged by vandals.
10 It is known that the suspect is dangerous.

LISTENING

- a A3 B1 C2 D1 E3 F2

3
B

1 READING

- a A
b 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 mild 3 damp 4 cool 5 lightning
6 hot
b 2 monsoon 3 floods 4 hailstorm
5 hurricane 6 drought
c 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 g 8 f

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a breeze – heatwave
showers – drought
scorching – pouring
hailstorm – gale
soaked – below zero
flood – hurricane
bright – lightning

4 GRAMMAR

- b 2 I'm going to take
3 is having / is going to have
4 I'll help
5 she's going to leave
6 're going
c 2 will be flying
3 will have stopped
4 'll have read
5 'll be playing
6 'll be working
7 'll have built
8 'll be spending

LISTENING

- a 3
b 1 P 2 J 3 P 4 J 5 J 6 J 7 P

3
C

1 READING

- a 1C 2B 3D 4A
b 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T
c 2 phenomenon
3 emerging
4 element
5 pupils
6 thrill

2 VOCABULARY

- 2 seriously 3 easy 4 notice 5 care
6 time 7 part 8 advantage

3 MINI GRAMMAR

- 3 My boyfriend probably won't get the job.
4 It isn't likely that we'll be here this weekend.
5 They're likely to be having dinner when we arrive.
6 There will probably be a drought if it doesn't rain soon.
7 Jessica is likely to fail her driving test.
8 I probably won't be taking part in the campaign.

4 GRAMMAR

- b 2 tries 3 'll go 4 won't lose 5 'll call
6 don't take 7 won't give 8 will go
- c 2 until 3 when 4 If 5 as soon as
6 before 7 after 8 if
- d 3 Don't take the tablets until you have/
you've had your lunch.
4 I'll call you as soon as I get to my hotel
this evening.
5 Bring your swimsuit in case you want
to have a swim.
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 My boyfriend will call me as soon as he
lands.
9 Are you getting changed before you go
out?
10 People won't be allowed to fill their
swimming pool if the drought
continues.

5 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 They took advantage of me.
3 He never takes decisions.
4 Don't take any notice of her.
5 Take it easy for a few days.
6 He didn't take part in the game.

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 on 2 through 3 out 4 out 5 down

LISTENING

- a 1 South Pacific
2 their ankles
3 Bristol
4 were arrested
5 the USA
6 Bridge
7 American
8 too long
9 double

3 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH

1 THE INTERVIEW

- 1 long 2 sudden 3 face 4 way
5 degree 6 spot

2 IN THE STREET

- 1 fool 2 younger 3 awesome 4 count

3 READING

- a 1 C 2 E 3 A 4 B 5 D

4 A

1 READING

- a He built a shelter by a river and lived on a diet of snakes, lizards, and frogs.
b 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 c

2 VOCABULARY

- a 1 shocked 2 homesick 3 lonely
4 grateful 5 nervous 6 disappointed
7 offended 8 glad
hidden feeling: confused
- b 2 exhausted 3 terrified 4 astonished
5 stunned 6 furious 7 devastated
8 thrilled
- c 2 sick 3 dumps 4 worn 5 eyes
6 moon

3 GRAMMAR

- a 2 ✓
3 You wouldn't have sprained your ankle
4 I'd really miss you
5 if they had arrived earlier
6 ✓
7 we'd known it was the monsoon season
8 if he didn't smoke so much
- b 2 We would have made a snowman if the snow hadn't melted.
3 I wouldn't have had a swim if I had known the water was so cold.
4 If we had set off earlier, we would have arrived by now.
5 If they hadn't been so desperate, they wouldn't have hijacked the plane.
6 You wouldn't have got so sunburnt if you had used more sunscreen.
7 They would have regretted it if they hadn't bought the flat.
8 They wouldn't have understood the film if they hadn't read the book before.

4 PRONUNCIATION

- a /t/ depressed, shocked
/d/ overwhelmed, relieved, thrilled
/ɪd/ delighted, devastated, offended
- b 2 grateful
3 disappointed
4 furious
5 homesick
6 exhausted
7 terrified
8 desperate

LISTENING

- a 1 are sleeping
- 2 smoke alarm
- 3 the bedroom
- 4 matches and lighters
- 5 hot oil
- 6 close / shut
- 7 towels
- 8 nose and mouth
- 9 cleaner
- 10 pets or possessions

4
B

1 GRAMMAR

- b 2 must 3 might 4 can't 5 can't
6 might 7 might 8 must
- c 2 You might have left your bag on your seat in the restaurant.
- 3 My wife can't have taken my keys.
- 4 Our neighbours might have gone on holiday.
- 5 The Mayor can't have accepted the bribe.
- 6 The thieves might have sold the stolen goods.
- 7 My girlfriend must have been at home last night.
- 8 I can't have borrowed any money from you.
- d 2 should have studied more.
- 3 shouldn't have done so much.
- 4 shouldn't have driven so fast.
- 5 shouldn't have bought it.
- 6 should have dressed up.

2 READING

- a 1 C 2 A 3 D 4 B
- b 2 F 3 DS 4 DS 5 T 6 F 7 DS

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 You couldn't have seen a ghost.
- 3 They may have left by now.
- 4 We should have booked a table.
- 5 I must have been asleep.
- 6 She shouldn't have called the police.

4 VOCABULARY

- 2 reminded 3 robbed 4 ✓ 5 argue
- 6 look 7 ✓ 8 heard 9 mind 10 ✓

5 MINI GRAMMAR

- 2 I'd rather sit
- 3 we'd better not call
- 4 'd better not eat
- 5 would you rather do
- 6 I'd rather not

LISTENING

- a A 3 B 1 C 2
- b Speaker 3

4
C

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 as if / like
- 3 -
- 4 like
- 5 like
- 6 as if / like
- 7 -
- 8 as if / like
- b 2 tastes
- 3 looks like
- 4 smell as if / like
- 5 sounds like
- 6 feels
- 7 tastes like
- 8 looks

2 VOCABULARY

- a 1 wrist 2 thigh 3 elbow 4 lungs
- 5 calf 6 kidneys 7 ankle 8 heart
- 9 waist
- hidden body part: shoulders
- b 2 yawning 3 shook 4 waved
- 5 combed 6 shrugged 7 blowing
- 8 stare
- c 2 learn by heart
- 3 get it off your chest
- 4 ✓
- 5 pulling your leg
- 6 ✓
- 7 get it out of my head
- 8 tip of my tongue

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 rough 3 laugh 4 enough 5 tough

4 READING

- a She can't recognize people she's met before.
- b 1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C
- c 2 thoughtless 3 to cope with
- 4 consoled 5 acquaintance 6 venue
- 7 bump into 8 strategies
- d 2 to cope with 3 thoughtless 4 venue
- 5 a clue 6 strategies 7 consoled
- 8 acquaintance

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 set 2 got 3 tell 4 hold 5 Calm

LISTENING

- a Women who marry men who look like their father.
Emma seems to believe it. Jerry isn't convinced.
- b 1 faces, fathers
- 2 15
- 3 (particularly) attractive
- 4 eyes, nose, mouth
- 5 good relationships
- 6 Gwyneth Paltrow, Stella McCartney

4 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH

1 THE INTERVIEW

- 1 show 2 difference 3 over 4 point
- 5 that's 6 goes

2 IN THE STREET

- 1 as far as 2 a buzz 3 sort of
- 4 a couple of 5 about to
- 1 D 2 E 3 A 4 B 5 C

3 READING

- a There are no seats with a perfect view of the stage.
You may get wet and cold as there is no roof.
- b 1 10.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m. Monday to Saturday
- 2 No, it wasn't. It's about 200 metres from the original site.
- 3 No, there aren't. There are only performances for six months of the year.
- 4 No, they aren't. They range from €7.50 to €48.
- 5 No, you can't.
- 6 Yes, you can. There are guided tours all year round.
- 7 At the ticket office (in person or by telephone) or online via Seetickets.
- 8 You get wet.

1 GRAMMAR

- b 2 doing 3 to sleep 4 check 5 seeing
6 to drive 7 go out 8 Travelling
9 to receive 10 to pay
- c 2 climbing 3 to call 4 to send 5 to buy
6 reading 7 ironing 8 spending

2 READING

- a 1 deafness 2 musicians
- b 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a /tʃ/ chorus
/k/ catchy
/tʃ/ chaos
/ʃ/ challenge
- b 2 lyrics 3 rhythm 4 lifestyle
5 country 6 psychiatrist

4 VOCABULARY

- a 2 violin 3 bass guitar 4 drums
5 saxophone 6 keyboard 7 piano
8 organ
- b 2 composer 3 lead singer 4 DJ
5 singer-songwriters 6 orchestra
7 choir 8 conductor
- c 2 blowing 3 music 4 ear 5 tune
6 incomprehensible 7 moving
8 monotonous

LISTENING

- a A3 B1 C2 D1,2 E1 F3

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 driving 3 living 4 eat 5 being
6 getting up 7 play 8 get used to
- b 2 got used to working
3 not used to having
4 used to wear
5 got used to living
6 used to looking after
7 got used to using
8 used to sleeping

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 I'm not used to having a nap after lunch.
3 We soon got used to living in our new house.
4 I didn't use to have problems getting to sleep.

- 5 Terry is used to working at night so he doesn't feel tired.
6 She couldn't get used to living on her own.

- b 2 pillow 3 jet-lagged 4 sheets
5 snore 6 nightmare

3 READING

- a 1 to stay awake to win a prize
2 because people were worried about the contestants' health
- b 1 E 2 A 3 D 4 C 5 B
- c 2 exploited 3 tough 4 endured
5 rivals 6 eliminated 7 under scrutiny
8 watchdog

4 VOCABULARY

- a 2 oversleep, alarm
3 dreams
4 sleepy
5 blanket
6 log
7 keeps, awake
- b 2 nap 3 insomnia 4 set 5 fall asleep
6 siesta

LISTENING

- a 1 People who are sleep deprived, e.g. stressed business executives
2 Sleep spas / Sleep spa chains
- b 1 efficient 2 sick 3 leather 4 blanket
5 soft 6 hood 7 20 8 12, 15

1 GRAMMAR

- b 1 He said that he was leaving on Wednesday.
2 She told him that she'd never been to Japan.
3 They told me that I had to be on time.
4 He asked me where the bus station was.
5 The teacher asked us if we had done the homework.
6 The woman asked me what time the show started.
7 Anna told me not to tell anybody.
8 The old man asked me to close the window / The old man asked me if I could close the window.
- c 2 promised to give me
3 ✓
4 encouraged me to go
5 recommended visiting
6 threatened to give
7 ✓
8 accused him of not telling

- d 2 advised him not to leave
3 suggested going
4 offered to make
5 warned us not to park
6 apologized for being
7 invited her to stay
8 insisted on going

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 convince 3 offer 4 insist 5 promise
6 remind 7 deny 8 threaten
- b 2 refuse 3 advise 4 invite 5 persuade
6 accuse 7 regret 8 agree

3 VOCABULARY

- a 2 critics 3 newsreader 4 commentator
5 reporter 6 editor 7 presenter
8 freelance journalist
- b 1 b 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 f 6 c
- c 1 row 2 wed 3 quit 4 quiz 5 back
6 hit 7 tipped

4 MINI GRAMMAR

- 1 f 2 e 3 g 4 h 5 d 6 b 7 c 8 a

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 up 2 on 3 up 4 down 5 over

LISTENING

- a 1 Wednesday 2 Monday 3 Tuesday
- b 1 b 2 c 3 a

5 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH**1 THE INTERVIEW**

- 1 way 2 around 3 except 4 oddly
5 out 6 mean

2 IN THE STREET

- 1 out 2 hanging 3 get 4 quite 5 idea

3 READING

- a listen to music, watch plays, go to the circus, shop, camp, watch a cabaret
- b 1 in Glastonbury, in the south-west of England
2 by car or coach
3 a long weekend
4 over £120 (€180)
5 camping in tents, caravans, or campervans
6 about 200,000
7 since 1970
8 online or by phone

6

A

1 READING

- a 1 D 2 E 3 C 4 B 5 A
b 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a

2 GRAMMAR

- a 2 going to bed
3 ✓
4 cats
5 ✓
6 Women / men
7 Next week
10 a new motorbike

- b 2- 3 a 4- 5- 6 the 7 the
8 The

- c 1- 2 the 3 The 4- 5- 6-, -
7 The, the, the 8 The, the

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a /ðə/ 3, 4, 5
/ði:/ 2, 6

4 VOCABULARY

- a 2 quiet 3 butter 4 breakfast 5 fork
6 later 7 less 8 nothing
b 2 out 3 take 4 downs 5 order
6 sound

LISTENING

- a He was the first man to go into space / orbit the earth. He died in a plane crash in 1968.
b 1 village
2 test pilot
3 19
4 quick reactions
5 1961
6 27
7 108 minutes
8 (approximately) seven kilometres
9 celebrity
10 Director
11 killed
12 Kremlin

6

B

1 READING

- a 1 C 2 E 3 B 4 D 5 A
b 2 DS 3 DS 4 F 5 F 6 T 7 DS 8 T

- c 2 gave up
3 missed out on
4 goes through
5 taking up
6 jumped at the chance
7 changed my mind
8 sums up

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 cable car
3 law courts
4 city centre
5 pedestrian street
6 concert hall
7 old town
8 football stadium
9 cycle lane
10 taxi rank

- b 1 poverty
2 traffic jam
3 pollution
4 beggars
5 slums
6 overcrowding
7 homeless
8 sights

- c 2 run down
3 industrial
4 provincial
5 vibrant
6 polluted

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 provincial 3 majority 4 adolescent
5 perform

4 GRAMMAR

- a 2 bad health
3 some new furniture
4 some advice
5 some bread
6 a piece of luggage
7 some new clothes
8 a pair of pyjamas

- b 2 are 3 is 4 are 5 are 6 is 7 is
8 are 9 are 10 is

5 MINI GRAMMAR

- 2 going to have my jacket mended / having my jacket mended
3 has his hair cut
4 have had my car repaired.
5 have my carpets cleaned
6 having a wall built

- 7 has his flat cleaned
8 having our garden redesigned

LISTENING

- a A 3 B 2 C 1
b 1 C 2 B 3 C 4 A and C 5 B 6 A

6

C

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 Everybody was
3 Everything
4 ✓
5 All men
6 ✓
7 Most people
8 Every room
b 2 no 3 None 4 any 5 none 6 no
7 Any
c 2 Neither 3 either 4 nor 5 Both
6 both 7 Neither

2 READING

- a It's a wheelee suitcase and a ride-on toy
b 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c

3 VOCABULARY

- a 2 chemical 3 biology 4 genetic
5 Physics 6 geologist
b 1 c/d 2e 3b 4a 5f 6d/c
c 2 invented a machine
3 made, discovery
4 did an experiment
5 prove his theory
6 done research

4 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 same syllable
3 different syllable
4 same syllable
5 same syllable
6 same syllable
7 same syllable
8 different syllable

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 think 2 come 3 ran 4 crashed
5 hurry

LISTENING

- a D, E, C, B, A, F

6 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH

1 THE INTERVIEW

1 quite 2 number 3 aware 4 opposed

2 IN THE STREET

1 Anywhere 2 most 3 laid-back
4 hustle

3 READING

a a 'Segway' is a type of transport

b 1T 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T

7 A

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 was / were
3 lived
4 would hang up
5 wouldn't borrow
6 had
7 could afford
8 wouldn't watch
- b 2 wouldn't use my computer
3 would help with the housework
4 didn't have to go to work tomorrow
5 wouldn't call me every day
6 earned more money
7 didn't work at weekends
8 wouldn't shout all the time

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 stressful 3 terrified 4 amused
5 tiring 6 exhausted 7 scary
8 depressing
- b 2 shocked 3 impressive 4 irritating
5 exciting 6 worried 7 delightful
8 disappointed

3 READING

- a 1 D 2 E 3 A 4 B 5 C
- b 2 more straightforward
3 underlying problems
4 got on their nerves
5 constant reassurance
6 as well as
7 wreck a relationship
8 repeated exposure
- c 2 repeated exposure
3 Because repeated contact increases sensitivity.
4 demanding constant reassurance about clothing
5 refusal to clean the bathroom or make the bed
6 arguments over minor incidents

4 GRAMMAR

- 2 hadn't eaten
3 had set
4 hadn't spent
5 had got
6 hadn't watched
7 had caught
8 hadn't lent

5 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 annoyed 3 worried 4 frustrated
5 stressed 6 amusing 7 thrilling
8 offended

6 VOCABULARY

- 2 go far
3 go with
4 go without
5 went back on
6 gone wrong
7 going through
8 going on

LISTENING

a unwell D, critical M, kind and friendly M,
selfish D, helpful M

You don't need to use *stubborn* or *insincere*.

7 B

1 READING

- a 3
b 2T 3T 4F 5T 6T 7T 8F

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 markets 3 imports 4 exports
5 expanding 6 launch 7 become
8 take over
- b 2 makes 3 doing 4 made 5 make
6 doing 7 make 8 make
- c Across: 2 cold 4 branch 7 colleague
8 multinational
- Down: 1 head 3 logo 5 client
6 advert 7 chain

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 decrease, V
3 refund, N
4 produce, N
5 progress, N
6 increase, V
7 record, V
8 transport, V

4 MINI GRAMMAR

- 2 Whichever 3 whatever 4 whenever
5 Whoever 6 however

5 GRAMMAR

- a 2 to
3 even though
4 in order to
5 so as not to
6 in spite of
7 despite
8 so that
- b 2 in spite of the fact that they don't do
any marketing
3 so that they would sell more products
4 so as not to miss my train
5 although I was late

LISTENING

- a Speaker 1 Levi's
Speaker 2 Nespresso
Speaker 3 Audi
- b A2 B1 C3 D1 E3 F2

7
C

1 GRAMMAR

- b 2 which/that
3 whose
4 who
5 where
6 which/that
7 who/that
You can leave out the relative pronoun in sentence 6.
- c 2 The company I work for is an advertising agency.
3 The man I spoke to is the head of my department.
4 One of the people I work with is a part time model.
5 The house they moved into was nearly two hundred years old.
6 Her boyfriend is the only person she can turn to.
- d 2 who 3 which 4 which 5 what
6 which 7 which
You can't use that in any of the sentences.

2 READING

- a 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 A 5 B
- b True: 1, 3, 5, 6, 7

3 VOCABULARY

- a 2 under-cooked
3 autobiography
4 semi-final
5 postgraduate
6 misspell
7 oversleep
8 microwave
- b 2 anti-social 3 pre-cooked 4 bilingual
5 misunderstood 6 multitasking

4 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 antibiotics
3 post-impressionist
4 ex-smoker
5 subtitles
6 redecorate
7 autopilot
8 mispronounce
the main stress is on the prefix in 5 and 7

PHRASAL VERBS IN CONTEXT

- 1 pick 2 take 3 going 4 ended

LISTENING

- a easier to learn, can help with learning another language
- b 1 1.6 million
2 19th century
3 wars
4 too difficult
5 equal
6 23
7 spelling
8 ten times
9 Chinese
10 90
11 Bulgaria
12 other languages

7 COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH

1 THE INTERVIEW

- 1 somehow 2 snap 3 whether
4 mainstream 5 cross 6 around

2 IN THE STREET

- 1 stuff 2 go 3 do 4 sense 5 worldwide

3 READING

- a 1 crackers, scammers
2 blogfade, blogover
3 tanorexia, yogarexia
4 baiji, climate canary
- b 1 climate canary
2 blogover
3 scammers
4 tanorexia
5 baiji
6 yogarexia
7 crackers
8 blogfade

**Clive Oxenden
Christina Latham-Koenig**

New ENGLISH FILE

**Entry Checker for
Upper-intermediate**

This Entry Checker:

- **revises the grammar from
*New English File Intermediate***
- **includes full grammar tables and
revision exercises**
- **prepares students for *New English File
Upper-intermediate***

OXFORD

1A present simple and continuous, action and non-action verbs

present simple: *I live, he works, etc.*

They **work** in a bank.
Where **do** you **live**?
He **doesn't** wear glasses.
She **usually has** cereal for breakfast.
I'm **never** late for work.

- Use the present simple for things that are always true or happen regularly.
- Remember the spelling rules, e.g. *lives, studies, watches*.
- Use ASI (auxiliary, subject, infinitive) or QUASI (question word, auxiliary, subject, infinitive) to help you with word order in questions.
- Put adverbs of frequency, e.g. *usually*, before the main verb and after *be*.

present continuous:
be + verb + -ing

A Who are you **waiting for**?
B I'm **waiting** for a friend.
A What are you **doing** after class?
B I'm **going** to the café.

- Use the present continuous (not present simple) for actions in progress at the time of speaking or for future arrangements.
- Remember the spelling rules, e.g. *living, studying, getting*.

action and non-action verbs

A What are you **cooking** tonight?
B I'm **making** pasta.
A Great! I really **like** pasta.

- Verbs which describe actions, e.g. *make, cook*, can be used in the present simple or continuous.
- Verbs which describe states or feelings (not actions), e.g. *like, want, be*, are not normally used in the present continuous.
- Common non-action verbs are **agree, be, believe, belong, depend, forget, hate, hear, know, like, love, matter, mean, need, prefer, realize, recognize, seem, suppose**.

▲ A few verbs have an action and a non-action meaning. The most common is *have*.
I have a big flat. = possession (non-action)
I can't talk now. I'm having lunch.
= an activity (action)

1B past tenses

past simple: *worked, stopped, went, had, etc.*

They **got** married last year.
What time **did** you **wake up** this morning?
I **didn't have** time to do my homework.

- Use the past simple for finished past actions.

past continuous: *was / were + verb + -ing*

A What **were** you **doing** at six o'clock last night?
B I **was watching** TV. It **was a cold night** and it **was raining**.

- Use the past continuous to describe an action in progress at a specific time in the past.

past perfect: *had + past participle*

When they turned on the TV, the match **had finished**.

I **felt** nervous because I **hadn't flown** before.

- Use the past perfect when you are talking about the past and you want to talk about an earlier past action.

using narrative tenses together

When John **arrived**, they **had** dinner.
(first John arrived, then they had dinner)
When John **arrived**, they **were having** dinner.

(when John arrived they were in the middle of dinner)

When John **arrived**, they **had had** dinner.
(they had dinner before John arrived)

- Remember **Irregular verbs** p.156.

1C future forms

be going to + infinitive

future plans and intentions

My sister's **going to adopt** a child.
Are you going to buy a new car?
I'm **not going to go** to New York next week.

predictions

I think they're **going to win**. (They're playing very well.)
It's **going to rain**. (The sky is very dark.)

- Use *going to* NOT *will / won't* when you have already decided to do something.
- With the verb *go* you can leave out the infinitive.
I'm not going (to go) to New York.

present continuous: *be + verb + -ing*

future arrangements

We're **getting** married in October.
They're **meeting** at 10.00.
She's **leaving** on Friday.

- You can usually use present continuous or *going to* for future plans / arrangements.
- *going to* shows that you have made a decision.
We're going to get married in the summer.
- Present continuous emphasizes that you have made the arrangements.
We're getting married on July 12th (e.g. we've booked the church).

will / shall + infinitive

I'll **have** the steak. (instant decision)

I **won't tell** anybody where you are. (promise)

I'll **carry** that bag for you. (offer)

Shall I help you with your homework? (offer)

Shall we eat out tonight? (suggestion)

You'll **love** the film! (prediction)

- Use *will / won't* (NOT the present simple) for instant decisions, promises, offers, and suggestions.
- Use *shall* (NOT *will*) with *I* and *we* for offers and suggestions when they are questions.
- Use *will* or *going to* for predictions.

1A

a Correct the mistakes in the highlighted phrases.

Ouch! You stand on my foot! You're standing

- 1 They have always lunch at 2 o'clock on a Sunday.
- 2 He can't come to the phone now. He has dinner.
- 3 We are needing to know before Friday.
- 4 We're studing a lot now because we have an exam on Monday.
- 5 He don't eat fish at all.
- 6 We always are busy.
- 7 Do you go out this Saturday night?
- 8 She always replys to my emails.
- 9 A Are they going to the beach today?
B They don't know. It's depending on the weather.

b Write questions in the present continuous or present simple.

- A What are you eating? (you / eat) B A pizza.
- 1 A Where _____ dinner tonight? (you / have)
B In the new Italian restaurant.
 - 2 A What _____? (he / do)
B He's a doctor.
 - 3 A _____ this summer? (you / go away)
B Yes, we're going to Greece.
 - 4 A _____ to come for dinner tomorrow? (you / want)
B Yes, that would be nice. Shall I bring some wine?
 - 5 A What _____? (she / cook)
B Chicken. It smells delicious!

1B

a Combine the two sentences. Use the verb in **bold** in the past continuous or past perfect.

Jill **had** a siesta from 4.00 to 6.00. Mark picked up the tickets at 5.00.
Mark picked up the tickets when Jill was having a siesta.

- 1 They **watched** a film from 8.00 until 10.00. I arrived at 9.30.
When I arrived, they _____ a film.
- 2 I **left** home at 8.00. He phoned me at 9.00.
When he phoned me, I _____ home.
- 3 They **studied** for the exam the weekend before. The exam didn't go well.
The exam didn't go well although they _____ the weekend before.
- 4 She **cycled** to university today. In the middle of her journey, she had an accident.
When she _____ to university today, she had an accident.
- 5 I only **had** five classes. I passed my first English exam.
When I passed my first English exam, I _____ (only) five classes.

b Complete with the past simple, past continuous, or past perfect.

They didn't realize that they had been there before. (not realize, be)

- 1 A How _____? (the accident / happen)
B She _____ back from London when she _____ a truck. (drive, hit)
- 2 We _____ eating when Rebecca _____ us to say she would be late. (already / start, call)
- 3 We didn't finish work until 7.30, so we _____ dinner out and _____ to the cinema. (have, go)
- 4 Chris arrived too late. The party _____ and his friends _____ home. (finish, go)
- 5 Martin _____ control of his car because he _____ on his mobile. (lose, talk)

1C

a Circle the correct form. Tick (✓) the sentence if both are possible.

(I'm not going) / I won't go to the wedding because I'm too busy.

- 1 I'm going to study / I'll study Chinese this summer.
- 2 A Shall we / Will we go for a walk?
B Good idea.
- 3 We'll go / We're going to Italy on holiday. I can't wait.
- 4 What are you going to wear / are you wearing to Sarah's party?
- 5 I don't think it will rain / it's going to rain today.
- 6 A I can't do this homework. B I'll help / I help you.
- 7 I'm meeting / I meet Julie at the shopping centre.
- 8 I'm really sorry. I promise I won't do / I'm not going to do it again.
- 9 They're getting / They're going to get a new car next month.

b Complete B's replies with a correct future form.

A Sorry, Clive's not in.
B OK. I'll call back at 6.00. (call back)

- 1 A There's no food.
B Don't worry, I _____ some. (get)
- 2 A Shall we go to the concert?
B Sorry, I can't. I _____ out to dinner with some friends. (go)
- 3 A What's for lunch?
B We _____ fish. I've already put it in the oven. (have)
- 4 A Is that someone at the door?
B Yes, but don't worry. I _____ it. (answer)
- 5 A Clare looks big!
B She's pregnant. She _____ a baby in December. (have)

2A present perfect and past simple

present perfect simple: *have / has + past participle (worked, seen, etc.)*

past experiences	recent past actions	with <i>yet</i> and <i>already</i> (for emphasis)
I've been to London, but I haven't been to Oxford. She's never met his ex-wife. Have you ever lost your credit card?	I've cut my finger! He's just arrived at the airport.	I've already done my homework. Can I watch TV? Have you finished yet? My brother hasn't found a new job yet.

- We often use *ever* and *never* when we ask or talk about past experiences. They go before the main verb.
- just* and *already* go before the main verb in [+] sentences, *yet* goes at the end of the phrase in [-] sentences and [?].
- For irregular past participles see **Irregular verbs** p.156.

unfinished states (non-action verbs) which start in the past and are still true now

- A They've **known** each other for 10 years.
B How long **have they been** married?
A Since 2004.

- Use *How long...?* + present perfect to ask about an unfinished period of time (from the past until now).
- Use *for* + a period of time, e.g. *for two weeks*, or *since* with a point of time, e.g. *since 1990*.

present perfect or past simple?

I've been to Madrid twice. (= in my life up to now)	I went there in 1998 and 2002. (= on two specific occasions)
How long have you been married to Alan? (= you are married to Alan now)	How long were you married to Jake? (= you are not married to Jake now)
I've (just) bought a new computer. (= I don't say exactly when)	I bought it on Saturday. (= I say when)

- Use the present perfect when there is a connection between the past and the present.
- Use the past simple to ask or talk about **finished** actions in the past, when the time is mentioned or understood. We often use a past time expression, e.g. *January, last week*, etc.

2B present perfect continuous

present perfect continuous for unfinished actions

How long **have you been learning** English?
He's **been working** here since April.
They've **been going out** together for three years.

- have / has been + verb + -ing*
- Use the present perfect continuous with *for* and *since* with **action verbs** (e.g. *learn, go*, etc.).

▲ With **non-action verbs** (e.g. *know, be*, etc.) use the present perfect simple NOT the present perfect continuous with *for* and *since*.
I've known her for ages. NOT *I've been knowing her for ages.*
With *live* and *work* you can use the present perfect simple or continuous with *for* and *since*.
I've been living here for six months.
I've lived here for six months.

present perfect continuous for recent continuous actions

- A Your eyes are red. **Have you been crying?**
B No, I've **been cutting** onions.

- Use the present perfect continuous for actions which have been going on very recently. They have usually just stopped.

2C comparatives and superlatives

comparing two things (or actions)

My sister is a bit **taller than** me.
London is **more expensive than** Edinburgh.
This test is **less difficult than** the last one.

Olive oil is **better for you than** butter.
You drive **more slowly than** me.
Liverpool played **worse today than** last week.

Flying isn't **as comfortable as** going by train.
He doesn't smoke **as much as** she does.
Her new car looks **the same as** the old one.

- Regular comparative adjectives / adverbs: *hard > harder, big > bigger, easy > easier, modern > more modern, difficult > more difficult, carefully > more carefully*
- Irregular comparative adjectives / adverbs: *good / well > better, bad / badly > worse, far > further*
- After *than* or *as* we can use an object pronoun *me, him, her*, etc. or a subject pronoun (*I, he, she*) + auxiliary verb, e.g. *She's taller than me* OR *She's taller than I am* but NOT *She's taller than I*.

superlatives

He's **the tallest** player in the team.
Oslo is **the most expensive** capital city in Europe.
This book is **the least difficult** to understand.
She's **the best student** in the class.

Who drives **the most carefully** in your family?
That's **the worst** they've ever played.

- Form superlatives like comparatives but use *-est* instead of *-er* and *most / least* instead of *more / less*.
- You normally use *the* before superlatives, but you can also use possessive adjectives, e.g. *my best friend, their most famous song*.

2A

a Correct the mistakes in the highlighted phrases.

I've never saw *Ocean's Thirteen*. *I've never seen*

- 1 She left at 7.00 a.m. but she yet hasn't arrived.
- 2 They don't see each other since they were children.
- 3 Have you ever wrote a song?
- 4 He have never been to Venice.
- 5 I've lent Bill my car yesterday, but he hasn't given it back yet.
- 6 I've studied English since ten years.
- 7 What year have he left home?
- 8 They already have been to France, so this year they're going to Spain.
- 9 I sent him an invitation, but he doesn't reply yet.
- 10 They live in New York since 1998.

b Complete the dialogues with the past simple or present perfect.

I've *already seen* that film before. (already / see)

- 1 A How long _____ in this company? (you / be)
B I _____ three years ago. (start)
- A Do you live alone?
B I _____ with a friend for the first year but then I _____ into a small apartment last October and I _____ there since then. (live, move, live)
- 2 A _____ a job yet? (your brother / find)
B Yes, he _____ work in a hospital. (just / start)
- 3 A _____ to Zero – that new club? (you / ever / be)
B Yes, we _____ there for Barbara's party. (go)
A What was it like?
B The music _____ great but it _____ a fortune! (be, cost)

2B

a Make sentences with the present perfect continuous (and *for / since* if necessary).

we / live there / 2005 \oplus

We've been living there since 2005.

- 1 how long / they / go out together ?
- 2 I / study English / two years \oplus
- 3 he / feel very well recently \ominus
- 4 you / read that book / months! \oplus
- 5 you / wait / a long time ?
- 6 we / spend much time together \ominus
- 7 how long / she / live there ?
- 8 I / rent this flat / three years. \oplus
- 9 the lift / work / 10 o'clock \ominus
- 10 she / work here / a long time ?

b Complete with a verb from the list in the present perfect continuous.

bark cry do ~~eat~~ play shop not sleep watch

- A Your mum's lost a lot of weight!
B Yes. She *'s been eating* a lot less recently.
- 1 A You look sad. _____ you _____?
B Yes. I _____ a sad movie.
 - 2 A The neighbour's dog _____ for the last two hours. I can't sleep.
B Shall I phone them and see if they're in?
 - 3 A You look terrible!
B I _____ well recently. I keep waking up.
 - 4 A I've spent a fortune!
B Well, we _____ all day.
 - 5 A You look hot! What _____ you _____?
B I _____ tennis for three hours.

2C

a Complete with one word.

She's much *more* interesting than her sister.

- 1 She's not as stupid _____ they think she is.
- 2 It's _____ best film we've seen for years.
- 3 It was more expensive _____ they expected.
- 4 I think it was the best restaurant I've _____ been to.
- 5 Is New York the biggest city _____ the USA?
- 6 John's the _____ selfish person I know.
- 7 Your jacket is the same _____ hers.
- 8 He speaks _____ quickly than she does.
- 9 We play tennis _____ often as we did before.
- 10 Her brother's about 20 and she's a year older than _____.

b Complete with the comparative or superlative of the **bold** word.

Indian food is much *spicier* than Chinese food.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Is it _____ in the south than the north? | spicy |
| 2 This is _____ of all our companies. | hot |
| 3 My brother's _____ person I know. | competitive |
| 4 The book's much _____ than the film. | lazy |
| 5 It was _____ lecture we've been to. | good |
| 6 Can we start the meeting a bit _____. | boring |
| 7 It was _____ restaurant in town. | early |
| 8 Helen is _____ person in this office. | bad |
| 9 The _____ way to travel is by train. | ambitious |
| 10 The journey was _____ than they expected. | safe |
| | far |

2A present perfect and past simple

present perfect simple: *have / has + past participle (worked, seen, etc.)*

past experiences	recent past actions	with <i>yet</i> and <i>already</i> (for emphasis)
I've been to London, but I haven't been to Oxford. She's never met his ex-wife. Have you ever lost your credit card?	I've cut my finger! He's just arrived at the airport.	I've already done my homework. Can I watch TV? Have you finished yet? My brother hasn't found a new job yet.

- We often use *ever* and *never* when we ask or talk about past experiences. They go before the main verb.
- *just* and *already* go before the main verb in [+] sentences, *yet* goes at the end of the phrase in [-] sentences and [?].
- For irregular past participles see **Irregular verbs** p.156.

unfinished states (non-action verbs) which start in the past and are still true now

- A They've **known** each other for 10 years.
B How long **have** they **been** married?
A Since 2004.

- Use *How long...?* + present perfect to ask about an unfinished period of time (from the past until now).
- Use *for* + a period of time, e.g. *for two weeks*, or *since* with a point of time, e.g. *since 1990*.

present perfect or past simple?

I've been to Madrid twice. (= in my life up to now)	I went there in 1998 and 2002. (= on two specific occasions)
How long have you been married to Alan? (= you are married to Alan now)	How long were you married to Jake? (= you are not married to Jake now)
I've (just) bought a new computer. (= I don't say exactly when)	I bought it on Saturday. (= I say when)

- Use the present perfect when there is a connection between the past and the present.
- Use the past simple to ask or talk about **finished** actions in the past, when the time is mentioned or understood. We often use a past time expression, e.g. *January, last week*, etc.

2B present perfect continuous

present perfect continuous for unfinished actions

How long **have** you **been learning** English?
He's **been working** here since April.
They've **been going out** together for three years.

- *have / has been + verb + -ing*
- Use the present perfect continuous with *for* and *since* with **action verbs** (e.g. *learn, go*, etc.).

▲ With **non-action verbs** (e.g. *know, be*, etc.) use the present perfect simple NOT the present perfect continuous with *for* and *since*.
I've known her for ages. NOT *I've been knowing her for ages.*
With *live* and *work* you can use the present perfect simple or continuous with *for* and *since*.
I've been living here for six months.
I've lived here for six months.

present perfect continuous for recent continuous actions

- A Your eyes are red. **Have** you **been crying**?
B No, I've **been cutting** onions.

- Use the present perfect continuous for actions which have been going on very recently. They have usually just stopped.

2C comparatives and superlatives

comparing two things (or actions)

My sister is a bit **taller than** me.
London is **more expensive than** Edinburgh.
This test is **less difficult than** the last one.

Olive oil is **better for you than** butter.
You drive **more slowly than** me.
Liverpool played **worse today than** last week.

Flying isn't as **comfortable as** going by train.
He doesn't smoke **as much as** she does.
Her new car looks **the same as** the old one.

superlatives

He's **the tallest** player in the team.
Oslo is **the most expensive** capital city in Europe.
This book is **the least difficult** to understand.
She's **the best student** in the class.

Who drives **the most carefully** in your family?
That's **the worst** they've ever played.

- Form superlatives like comparatives but use *-est* instead or *-er* and *most / least* instead of *more / less*.
- You normally use *the* before superlatives, but you can also use possessive adjectives, e.g. *my best friend, their most famous song*.

- Regular comparative adjectives / adverbs: *hard > harder, big > bigger, easy > easier, modern > more modern, difficult > more difficult, carefully > more carefully*
- Irregular comparative adjectives / adverbs: *good / well > better, bad / badly > worse, far > further*
- After *than* or *as* we can use an object pronoun *me, him, her*, etc. or a subject pronoun (*I, he, she*) + auxiliary verb, e.g. *She's taller than me* OR *She's taller than I am* but NOT *She's taller than I*.

2A

a Correct the mistakes in the highlighted phrases.

I've never saw *Ocean's Thirteen*. *I've never seen*

- 1 She left at 7.00 a.m. but she yet hasn't arrived.
- 2 They don't see each other since they were children.
- 3 Have you ever wrote a song?
- 4 He have never been to Venice.
- 5 I've lent Bill my car yesterday, but he hasn't given it back yet.
- 6 I've studied English since ten years.
- 7 What year have he left home?
- 8 They already have been to France, so this year they're going to Spain.
- 9 I sent him an invitation, but he doesn't reply yet.
- 10 They live in New York since 1998.

b Complete the dialogues with the past simple or present perfect.

I've already seen that film before. (already / see)

- 1 A How long _____ in this company? (you / be)
B I _____ three years ago. (start)
A Do you live alone?
B I _____ with a friend for the first year but then I _____ into a small apartment last October and I _____ there since then. (live, move, live)
- 2 A _____ a job yet? (your brother / find)
B Yes, he _____ work in a hospital. (just / start)
- 3 A _____ to Zero – that new club? (you / ever / be)
B Yes, we _____ there for Barbara's party. (go)
A What was it like?
B The music _____ great but it _____ a fortune! (be, cost)

2B

a Make sentences with the present perfect continuous (and *for* / *since* if necessary).

we / live there / 2005 \oplus

We've been living there since 2005.

- 1 how long / they / go out together ?
- 2 I / study English / two years \oplus
- 3 he / feel very well recently \ominus
- 4 you / read that book / months! \oplus
- 5 you / wait / a long time ?
- 6 we / spend much time together \ominus
- 7 how long / she / live there ?
- 8 I / rent this flat / three years. \oplus
- 9 the lift / work / 10 o'clock \ominus
- 10 she / work here / a long time ?

b Complete with a verb from the list in the present perfect continuous.

bark cry do eat play shop not sleep watch

- A Your mum's lost a lot of weight!
B Yes. She *'s been eating* a lot less recently.
- 1 A You look sad. _____ you _____?
B Yes. I _____ a sad movie.
 - 2 A The neighbour's dog _____ for the last two hours. I can't sleep.
B Shall I phone them and see if they're in?
 - 3 A You look terrible!
B I _____ well recently. I keep waking up.
 - 4 A I've spent a fortune!
B Well, we _____ all day.
 - 5 A You look hot! What _____ you _____?
B I _____ tennis for three hours.

2C

a Complete with one word.

She's much *more* interesting than her sister.

- 1 She's not as stupid _____ they think she is.
- 2 It's _____ best film we've seen for years.
- 3 It was more expensive _____ they expected.
- 4 I think it was the best restaurant I've _____ been to.
- 5 Is New York the biggest city _____ the USA?
- 6 John's the _____ selfish person I know.
- 7 Your jacket is the same _____ hers.
- 8 He speaks _____ quickly than she does.
- 9 We play tennis _____ often as we did before.
- 10 Her brother's about 20 and she's a year older than _____.

b Complete with the comparative or superlative of the **bold** word.

Indian food is much *spicier* than Chinese food.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Is it _____ in the south than the north? | spicy |
| 2 This is _____ of all our companies. | hot |
| 3 My brother's _____ person I know. | competitive |
| 4 The book's much _____ than the film. | lazy |
| 5 It was _____ lecture we've been to. | good |
| 6 Can we start the meeting a bit _____. | boring |
| 7 It was _____ restaurant in town. | early |
| 8 Helen is _____ person in this office. | bad |
| 9 The _____ way to travel is by train. | ambitious |
| 10 The journey was _____ than they expected. | safe |
| | far |

3A *must, have to, should* (obligation)obligation / necessity: *have to / must* (+ infinitive)

You **have to** wear a seatbelt in a car.
 Do you **have to** work on Saturdays?
 I **had to** wear a uniform at my primary school.
 I'll **have to** get up early tomorrow. My interview is at 9.00.

I **must** remember to phone Emily tonight – it's her birthday.
 You **must** be on time for class tomorrow – there's a test.

- *Must* and *have to* have a very similar meaning. *Have to* is more common for **general, external** obligations, for example rules and laws. *Must* is more common for **specific** (i.e. on one occasion) or **personal** obligations. Compare:
I have to wear a shirt and tie at work (It's the rule in this company).
I must buy a new shirt – this one is too old now (It's my own decision).
- *Have to* is a normal verb and it exists in all tenses.
- *Must* is a modal verb. The only forms are *must* and *mustn't*.
- You can also use *have to* or *must* for strong recommendations, e.g. *You have to / must see that film – it's fantastic.*

no obligation / necessity: *don't have to*

You **don't have to** pay for the tickets. They're free.
 You **don't have to** go to the party if you don't want to.

prohibition: *mustn't* (+ infinitive)

You **mustn't** eat that cake – it's for the party.
 You **mustn't** touch that. It's dangerous.

- *Don't have to* and *mustn't* are completely different. Compare:
You mustn't drive along this street. = It's prohibited, against the law.
You don't have to drive – we can get a train. = You can drive if you want to but it's not necessary / obligatory.
- You can often use *can't* or *not allowed to* instead of *mustn't*.
You mustn't park here. You can't park here. You're not allowed to park here.

▲ *Have got to* is often used instead of *have to* in spoken English, e.g. *I've got to go now. It's very late.*

advice or opinion: *should / shouldn't* (+ infinitive)

You **should** take warm clothes with you to Dublin. It might be cold at night.
 I think the government **should** do something about unemployment.

- *Should* is not as strong as *must / have to*. We use it to say if we think something is the right or wrong thing to do.
- *Should* is a modal verb. The only forms are *should* and *shouldn't*.
- You can also use *ought to* and *ought not to* instead of *should / shouldn't*.
You should take an umbrella with you. You ought to take an umbrella with you.

3B *must, may, might, can't* (deduction)when you are sure something is true: *must*

They **must** be out. There aren't any lights on.
 She **must** have a lot of money. She drives a Porsche.

when you think something is possibly true: *may / might*

His phone's switched off. He **might** be on the plane now.
 She **might not** like that skirt. It's not her style.
 She's not at home. She **may** be working.
 He hasn't written. He **may not** have my address.

when you are sure something is impossible / not true: *can't*

He **can't** be ill. I saw him at the gym.
 They **can't** be Italian. They're speaking to each other in Spanish.

- We often use *must, may / might, and can't* to say how sure or certain we are about something (based on the information we have).
- In this context, the opposite of *must* is *can't* NOT *mustn't*.

3C *can, could, be able to* (ability and possibility)*can / could*

I **can** speak Spanish very well.
 She **could** play the violin when she was three.
 She **can't** come tonight. She's ill.
 They **couldn't** wait because they were in a hurry.
Could you open that door, please?

- *Can* is a modal verb. It only has a present, past, and conditional form (but can also be used with a future meaning).
- For other tenses and forms use *be able to*.

be able to + infinitive

I **am able to** accept your invitation.
 They **weren't able to** come.
 I'll **be able to** practise my English in London.
 She **has been able to** speak French since she was a child.
 I'd like **to be able to** ski.
 I'd love **being able to** sleep late at weekends.

- You can use *be able to* in the present, past, future, present perfect, and as a gerund or infinitive.
- *be able to* in the present and past is more formal than *can / could*.

3A

a Circle the correct form.

You *shouldn't* / *mustn't* drive so fast. It's not safe.

- 1 We *mustn't* / *don't have to* leave yet. There's plenty of time.
- 2 You *must* / *should* remember to finish your homework. Your teacher will be furious if you forget.
- 3 The meeting was cancelled so we *hadn't to* / *didn't have to* go.
- 4 *Do you have to* / *Should you* be 16 before you can leave school?
- 5 They *must* / *had to* catch a later train which is why they were late.
- 6 *Had you to* / *Did you have to* wear a uniform when you were at school?
- 7 I think people *mustn't* / *shouldn't* talk so loud on their mobile phones.
- 8 She's on a diet so she *mustn't* / *doesn't have to* eat anything with a lot of calories.

b Complete the second sentence with **two** or **three** words so it means the same as the first.

Parking is prohibited here. You *mustn't park* here.

- 1 It isn't a good idea to do sport after a big meal.
You _____ sport after a big meal.
- 2 Was it necessary for them to come?
Did _____ come?
- 3 The conference isn't obligatory.
You _____ go to the conference.
- 4 It's a good idea to talk to your parents if you have a problem. You _____ to your parents if you have a problem.
- 5 People are not allowed to go in this room.
People _____ in this room.

3B

a Match the sentences.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 He must be over 65. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I | A He hasn't studied much. |
| 2 He can't be working. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | B He's just sent me a text message. |
| 3 He may not pass the exam. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | C He isn't married. |
| 4 He might like this painting. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | D He's interested in Modern Art. |
| 5 He must be very generous. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | E He usually stays up late. |
| 6 He can't be her husband. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | F He isn't answering the phone. |
| 7 He may be on holiday. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | G He's still at university. |
| 8 He might not be in bed. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | H He doesn't like music. |
| 9 He must have a mobile phone. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | I He retired 5 years ago. |
| 10 He can't be a good singer. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | J He always pays for everything. |

b Complete with *might (not)*, *must*, or *can't*.

This cake is really sweet. It *must* have chocolate in it.

- 1 A Which actor is that?
B I'm not sure but it _____ be George Cloone
- 2 He looks very tired. He _____ be sleeping well
- 3 I'm not sure why they haven't arrived.
They _____ have remembered the right time.
- 4 Phil _____ have a lot of freetime. He's always out
- 5 They _____ be at home. I've rung them all morning.
- 6 It _____ be 1.00 p.m. I've only done three pages of work.
- 7 He _____ be French! He speaks the language perfectly.

3C

a Complete with the correct form of *be able to*.

I've never *been able to* learn to sing.

- 1 I _____ ring them yet.
- 2 He used to _____ play football really well.
- 3 I _____ finish this work until Friday.
- 4 We'd really like _____ speak Spanish well.
- 5 _____ you _____ come to our party?
It's on Saturday night.
- 6 If you studied harder, you _____ pass all your exams.
- 7 When we've saved another €1000, we _____ go on holiday.
- 8 I hate _____ have more time for myself.

b Complete with *can / can't*, or *could / couldn't* where possible. If not, use a form of *be able to*.

He told her that he *couldn't* do anything about the problem.

- 1 I _____ finish this work now. I'm too tired.
- 2 When we lived in Lisbon I _____ speak Portuguese quite well
- 3 He would love _____ dance well.
- 4 If I don't save more money, I _____ buy a house.
- 5 My father _____ cook much better now he's been to some classes.
- 6 To get a good job you need _____ speak at least two languages.
- 7 He _____ see you later if you want.
- 8 We _____ move house yet. We're still looking.

4A first conditional and future time clauses + *when, until, etc.*

first conditional sentences: *if (or unless) + present simple, will / won't + infinitive*

If you **don't do** more work, you'll **fail** the exam.
He'll **be** late for work if he **doesn't hurry up**.
She won't get into university unless she **gets** good grades.

- Use the present tense (NOT the future) after *if* in first conditional sentences.
- *unless = if...not*
I won't go unless she invites me. = I won't go if she doesn't invite me.
- You can also use an imperative instead of the *will* clause, e.g. *Come and see us next week if you have time.*

future time clauses

As soon as you **get** your exam results, **call** me.
We'll **have** dinner when your father **gets** home.
I **won't go** to bed until you **come** home.
I'll **have** lunch before I **leave**.
After I **finish** university, I'll probably **take** a year off and travel.

- Use the present simple (NOT the future) after *when, as soon as, until, before, and after* to talk about the future.
- *as soon as = at the moment when, e.g.*
I'll call you as soon as I arrive.

4B second conditional

second conditional sentences: *if + past simple, would / wouldn't + infinitive*

If I **had** more money, I'd **buy** a bigger house.
If he **spoke** English, he **could get** a job in a hotel.
I **would get on** better with my parents if I **didn't live** with them.
I **wouldn't do** that job unless they **paid** me a really good salary.
If I **were** you, I'd **buy** a new computer.

- Use the second conditional to talk about a hypothetical / imaginary situation in the present or future and its consequence. Compare:
I don't have much money, so I can't buy a bigger house (real situation).
If I had more money, I'd buy a bigger house (hypothetical / imaginary situation).
- Use second conditionals beginning *If I were you, I'd...* to give advice. Here you can't use *If I was you*.

would / wouldn't + infinitive

My ideal holiday **would be** a week in the Bahamas.
I'd **never buy** a car as big as yours.

- You can also use *would / wouldn't + infinitive* (without an *if* clause) when you talk about imaginary situations.
- The contraction of *would* is 'd.

▲ Remember the difference between first and second conditionals.

If I have time, I'll help you.
= a possible situation. I may have time.
If I had time, I'd help you.
= an imaginary / hypothetical situation.
I don't / won't have time.

4C usually and used to

present habits and states

I usually **get up** at 8.00 on school days.
I **don't usually go out** during the week.
Houses in the suburbs usually **have** gardens.
Do you usually walk to work?

past habits and states

We **used to be** close friends but we don't see each other any more.
I **used to go out** with that girl when I was at school.
Did you use to wear glasses?
She **didn't use to have** fair hair. She had dark hair before.

- For present habits use *usually* or *normally* + present simple.
- For past habits use *used to / didn't use to + infinitive*. *Used to* does not exist in the present tense.
- We use *used to* for things that were true over a period of time in the past. It usually refers to something which is not true now.
I used to smoke. = I smoked for a period time in the past but now I don't.
- *Used to / didn't use to* can be used with action verbs (e.g. *wear, go out*) and non-action verbs (e.g. *be, have*).
- We often use *not...any more / any longer* (= not now) with the present simple to contrast with *used to*.
I used to go to the gym but I don't any more / any longer.

4A

a Complete with a word or expression from the list.

~~after~~ as soon as before if unless until when

After we finish dinner, we could go for a walk.

- 1 I must remember to feed the dog _____ I forget to.
- 2 Why don't we watch a film _____ he gets there?
- 3 I need to speak to John urgently. Please tell him _____ you can.
- 4 You won't get a ticket for the concert _____ you don't book.
- 5 He'll give you the exam results _____ he has marked all the papers.
- 6 She can't come _____ someone takes her. She hasn't got a car.
- 7 He'll be very excited _____ you tell him your news.
- 8 They want to go on travelling _____ they don't have any money left.
- 9 Please tidy your room _____ you leave the house.
- 10 _____ you don't stop smoking, you won't feel better.

b Complete with the present simple or *will*.

I'll give him your present when I see him. (see)

- 1 Don't forget to lock the door before you _____. (leave)
- 2 We'll have dinner when the film _____. (finish)
- 3 They _____ better until they finish this medicine. (not go)
- 4 If Rob calls, I _____ him you're out. (tell)
- 5 I'll go to bed as soon as I _____ home. (arrive)
- 6 We won't be able to see unless we _____ a seat at the front. (get)
- 7 When I finish this homework, I _____ out. (go)
- 8 He won't eat that food if he _____ meat. (not like)
- 9 Don't leave the room until I _____ you. (tell)
- 10 When they find out you're getting married, they _____ furious. (be)

4B

a Write second conditional sentences.

If you / speak to your boss, I'm sure he / understand.

If you spoke to your boss, I'm sure he would understand.

- 1 It / be better for me if we / meet tomorrow.
- 2 She / not treat him like that if she really / love him.
- 3 If I / can live anywhere in the world, I / live in New Zealand.
- 4 The kitchen / look bigger if we / paint it white.
- 5 I / not buy that house if I / be you.
- 6 He / be more attractive if he / wear nicer clothes.
- 7 If we / not have children, we / travel more.
- 8 What / you do in this situation if you / be me?

b First or second conditional? Complete the sentences.

If you tell him anything, he 'll tell everybody in the school. (tell)

We'd have a break if we had more time. (have)

- 1 They'll be angry if you _____ there late. (get)
- 2 If you did more exercise, you _____ better. (feel)
- 3 What would you do if you _____ the keys to the house? (lose)
- 4 If you buy the drinks, I _____ tonight. (cook)
- 5 I wouldn't be happy if I _____ in a big city. (not live)
- 6 He'll arrive at 6.00 if he _____ coming here. (not get lost)
- 7 What will she do if she _____ the job in Australia? (get)
- 8 If you went to the Seychelles, you _____ it. (enjoy)

4C

a Correct the mistakes in the **highlighted** phrases.

She wasn't **use to be** so friendly. *She didn't use to be*

- 1 I **use to get up** early, but I don't any more.
- 2 Did she always **used to live** here?
- 3 Do you **use to have breakfast** at 8.30?
- 4 They **didn't used to have** a car, they used to walk everywhere.
- 5 He doesn't like coffee, so he **use to drink tea** in the morning.
- 6 He **used be** a teacher, but now he's retired.
- 7 Do usually you **wear jeans** or a suit?
- 8 Last year **we used to go** to Scotland in July.
- 9 Does she **use to live** in a city when she was younger?
- 10 At school **we don't use to wear** a uniform. We wore what we liked.

b Complete with *used to* in , , or and a verb from the list.

argue be (x2) ~~go~~ have (x2) like live play work

- I *didn't use to go* to the cinema much but now I go once a week.
- 1 Mark _____ in Manchester but he moved to Brighton last year.
- 2 _____ you _____ short hair? You look different.
- 3 I _____ sports but now I play tennis and basketball.
- 4 We _____ really good friends but now we hardly ever see each other.
- 5 Where _____ you _____ before you changed job?
- 6 He _____ golf professionally but he retired last year.
- 7 When I lived in the country, I always _____ go for long walks.
- 8 _____ she _____ with friends before she got married.
- 9 He _____ so rude. In fact, he was quite polite before.

5A quantifiers

large quantities

They have **a lot of money**.
She has **lots of friends**.
He eats **a lot**.
There aren't **many cafés** near here.
Do you watch **much TV**?
Don't run. We have **plenty of time**.

- Use *a lot of / lots of* in [+] sentences.
- Use *a lot* when there is no noun, e.g. *He talks a lot*.
- *Much / many* are normally used in [-] sentences and [?], but *a lot of* can also be used.
- Use *plenty of* in [+] sentences to mean *as much as we need or more*.

small quantities

A Do you want some ice cream? B Just **a little**.
The town only has **a few cinemas**.
Hurry up. We have **very little time**.
I have **very few close friends**.

- Use *little* + uncountable nouns, *few* + plural countable nouns.
- *a little* and *a few* = some, but not a lot,
- *very little* and *very few* = not much / many.

zero quantity

There **isn't any** room in the car.
There's **no** room in the car.
A How much money do you have?
B **None**.

- Use *any* for zero quantity with a [-] verb. Use *no* with a [+] verb.
- Use *none* (without a noun) in short answers.

more than you need or want

I don't like this city. It's **too big**.
There's **too much traffic**.
There are **too many tourists**.

- Use *too* + adjective, *too much* + uncountable noun, *too many* + plural countable nouns.
- Use *enough* before a noun but after an adjective.

less than you need

There aren't **enough parks**.
The buses aren't **frequent enough**.

5B articles: *a / an, the*, no articleUse *a / an* with singular countable nouns

- the first time you mention a thing / person. I saw **an old man** with a dog.
- when you say what something is. It's **a nice house**.
- when you say what somebody does. She's **a lawyer**.
- in exclamations with *What...!* What **an awful day!**
- in expressions like ... three times **a week**

Use *the*

- when we talk about something we've already mentioned. I saw an old man with a dog, and **the dog** was barking.
- when there's only one of something. **The moon** goes round **the sun**.
- when it's clear what you're referring to. He opened **the door**.
- with places in a town, e.g. *cinema* and *theatre*. I'm going to **the cinema**.
- with superlatives. It's **the best** restaurant in town.

Don't use *the*

- when you are speaking in general (with plural and uncountable nouns). **Women** talk more than **men**.
Love is more important than **money**.
- with some nouns (e.g. *home*, *work*, *school*, *church*) after *at / to / from*. She's not **at home** today.
I get back **from work** at 5.30.
- before meals, days, and months. I never have **breakfast on Sunday**.
- before *next / last* + days, week, etc. See you **next Friday**.

5C gerunds and infinitives

Use the gerund (verb + *-ing*)

- 1 after prepositions and phrasal verbs. I'm very good **at remembering** names.
She's **given up smoking**.
- 2 as the subject of a sentence. **Eating out** is quite cheap here.
- 3 after some verbs, e.g. *hate*, *spend*, *don't mind*. I **don't mind getting up** early.

Common verbs which take the gerund include: **enjoy**, **hate**, **finish**, **like**, **love**, **mind**, **practise**, **spend**, **stop**, **suggest** and phrasal verbs, e.g. **give up**, **go on**, etc.

Use the infinitive (+ *to*)

- 1 after adjectives. My flat is **easy to find**.
- 2 to express a reason or purpose. He's saving money **to buy** a new car.
- 3 after some verbs, e.g. *want*, *need*, *learn*. She's never **learnt to drive**.
Try not to make a noise.

Common verbs which take the infinitive (with *to*) include: (**can't**) **afford**, **agree**, **decide**, **expect**, **forget**, **help**, **hope**, **learn**, **need**, **offer**, **plan**, **pretend**, **promise**, **refuse**, **remember**, **seem**, **try**, **want**, **would like**

Use the infinitive (without *to*)

- 1 after most modal and auxiliary verbs. I **can't** drive. We **must** hurry.
- 2 after *make* and *let*. My parents don't **let me go** out much.
She always **makes me laugh**.

- Gerunds and infinitives form the negative with *not*, e.g. *not to be*, *not being*.
- More verbs take the infinitive than the gerund.
- These common verbs can take either the gerund or infinitive with no difference in meaning: **begin**, **continue**, **prefer**, **start**.

▲ These verbs can take a gerund or an infinitive but the meaning is different.

Try to be on time.

= make an effort to be on time.

Try doing yoga.

= do it to see if you like it.

Remember to phone him.

= Don't forget to do it.

I remember meeting him years ago.

= I have a memory of it.

5A

a Circle the correct answer. Tick (✓) if both are possible.

I think this hotel is too / *too much* expensive.

- 1 There are *too much* / *too many* cars in this city.
- 2 Nobody talks to her. She has *very little* / *very few* friends.
- 3 There's been *a lot of* / *lots of* snow recently.
- 4 There aren't *enough sports centres* / *sports centres enough* in my area.
- 5 *I have no* / *I don't have any* money.
- 6 He eats *a lot* / *much*. He loves fast food.
- 7 A Do they speak Arabic? B Yes, *a little* / *a few*.
- 8 She doesn't have *no time* / *any time* to go out.

b Right (✓) or wrong (✗). Correct the wrong sentences.

He drives too much fast. *too fast*

- 1 Don't run! We have plenty time.
- 2 She has too many work at the moment.
- 3 We think we made a few mistakes in the exam.
- 4 I'm not enough old to leave home.
- 5 They can't go to the meeting. They're too busy.
- 6 He has very little time to enjoy himself.
- 7 A How many apples are there? B Any.
- 8 She's retired so she has much free time.

5B

a Circle the correct answer.

Did you see news / the news on TV last night?

- 1 Did you shut *door* / *the door* when you left *a house* / *the house*?
- 2 My sister is married to *Russian* / *a Russian*. He's *lawyer* / *a lawyer*.
- 3 They go to *theatre* / *the theatre* about twice *a month* / *the month*.
- 4 What *beautiful* / *a beautiful day*! Let's have lunch on *a terrace* / *the terrace*.
- 5 He loves *classical music* / *the classical music* and *Italian food* / *the Italian food*.
- 6 Who is *a girl* / *the girl* by a *window* / *the window*?
- 7 They leave *home* / *the home* at 7.30 and get to *work* / *the work* at 8.30.
- 8 *Men* / *The men* aren't normally as organized as *women* / *the women*.
- 9 They usually have *dinner* / *the dinner* at 7.00 and go to *bed* / *the bed* at about 10.30.
- 10 He has *a lovely face* / *the lovely face* and *the attractive eyes* / *attractive eyes*.

b Complete with *a* / *an*, *the*, or – (= no article).

Can you give me a lift to the airport?
I have to catch the 6.00 p.m. flight.

- 1 I went to _____ shopping centre _____ last Friday.
I had _____ time.
- 2 A Do you like _____ rap music? B It depends.
I hate _____ Eminem. I think _____ rap singers earn too much money.
- 3 She always drinks _____ expensive champagne and drives _____ expensive car.
- 4 Tom's _____ singer and _____ actor.
- 5 I've changed _____ day of _____ wedding.
It's _____ next Saturday now.
- 6 They walked to _____ museums but they got _____ bus back to _____ hotel.

5C

a Complete with the gerund or infinitive.

Smoking is banned in all public places. (smoke)

- 1 It's very cheap _____ a house in the countryside. (rent)
- 2 Do you like _____? (fly)
- 3 I told Tom _____ tickets for the concert. (book)
- 4 Tell mum _____ dinner tonight. We're going out. (not make)
- 5 He's worried about _____ his driving test. (fail)
- 6 We all went on _____ until 6.00 a.m. (dance)
- 7 _____ a teacher is a stressful job. (be)
- 8 It isn't easy _____ a flat in this city. (find)
- 9 Ruth is good at _____ new things. (learn)
- 10 A Why are you learning German?
B _____ talk to my boss. (be able to)

b Complete the sentences with *work*, *to work*, or *working*.

I regret not working harder when I was at university.

- 1 We spent all Sunday _____ in the garden.
- 2 She's decided _____ in Africa next year.
- 3 You must _____ harder if you want to pass the exam.
- 4 Our company often make us _____ overtime.
- 5 They don't like _____ in groups.
- 6 I'm not good at _____ late at night.
- 7 He's gone to New York _____ for the United Nations
- 8 _____ on your own can be quite difficult.
- 9 They promised not _____ late that evening.
- 10 She used _____ in a hospital when she was younger.

6A reported speech: statements and questions

direct statements	reported statements
'I like shopping.'	She said (that) she liked shopping.
'I'm going tomorrow.'	He told her he was going the next day .
'I'll always love you.'	He said he would always love me .
'I passed the exam!'	She told him she had passed the exam.
'I've forgotten my keys.'	He said he had forgotten his keys.
'I can't come.'	She said she couldn't come.
'I may be late.'	He said he might be late.
'I must go.'	She said she had to go .

- Tenses usually change like this: **present**>**past**; **will**>**would**; **past simple** / **present perfect**>**past perfect**
- Some modal verbs change, e.g. **can**>**could**, **may**>**might**, **must**>**had to**. Other modal verbs stay the same, e.g. *could*, *might*, *should*, etc.

direct questions	reported questions
'Are you married?'	She asked him if he was married.
'Did she phone?'	He asked me whether she had phoned .
'What's your name?'	I asked him what his name was .
'Where do you live?'	They asked me where I lived .

▲ • *Must* changes to *had to* BUT *mustn't* stays the same.
'You *mustn't* touch it.' She said I *mustn't* touch it.

- You usually have to change the pronouns. 'I like... '>She said **she** liked...
- Using **that** after *said* and *told* is optional.
- If you report what someone said on a different day or in a different place, some time and place words can change, e.g. **tomorrow**>**the next day**, **here**>**there**, **this**>**that**, etc.

'I'll meet you here tomorrow.'>He said he'd meet me there the next day.

▲ After *said* don't use a person or pronoun.
He said **he** was tired NOT He said me...
After *told* you must use a person or pronoun.
He told **me** he was tired. NOT He told he was...

- When you report a question, the tenses change as in reported statements.
- When a question begins with a verb (not a question word), add *if* (or *whether*).
- You also have to change the word order to subject + verb, and not use *do / did*.

reported speech: commands

direct speech	reported speech
'Go away.'	She told him to go away.
'Don't worry.'	The doctor told me not to worry .
'Can / Could you help me?'	I asked the shop assistant to help me.

▲ You can't use *said* in these sentences.
NOT She said him to go away.

- To report an imperative or request, use *told* or *asked* + person + the infinitive with *to*.
- To report a negative imperative, use a negative infinitive (e.g. **not to do**).

6B the passive: *be* + past participle

A lot of films are shot on location.	My bike has been stolen .
My car is being repaired today.	You'll be picked up at the airport.
<i>Death in Venice</i> was directed by Visconti.	This bill has to be paid tomorrow.
She died when the film was being made .	

- We often use the passive when it's not clear or important who does an action, e.g. *My bike has been stolen* (= Somebody has stolen my bike. I don't know who.)
- If you want to say who did the action, use *by*.

6C relative clauses

defining relative clauses

Julia's the woman **who / that** works with me.
It's a book **which / that** tells you how to relax.
That's the house **where** I was born.
That's the boy **whose** father plays for Real Madrid.
He's the man (**who / that**) I met on the plane.

- To give important information about a person, place, or thing use a relative clause (= a relative pronoun + subject + verb).
- Use the relative pronouns *who* for people, *which* for things, and *where* for places. Use *whose* to mean 'of who / of which'.
- You can use *that* instead of *who* or *which*.
- *Who*, *which*, and *that* can be omitted when the verbs in the main clause and the relative clause **have a different subject**, e.g. *He's the man I met on the plane*. (The subject of *met* is *I*, so it's not necessary to put *who*.)

non-defining relative clauses

This painting, **which** was painted in 1860, is worth £2 million.
Last week I visited my aunt, **who's** nearly 90 years old.
Burford, **where** my mother was born, is a beautiful town.
My neighbour, **whose** son goes to my son's school, has just re-married.

- If a relative clause gives extra, non-essential information (the sentence makes sense without it), you must put it between commas (or a comma and a full stop).
- In these clauses, you can't leave out the relative pronoun (*who*, *which*, etc.).
- In these clauses, you can't use *that* instead of *who / which*.

6A

a Complete the sentences using reported speech.

'The hotel is full.' The receptionist told me the hotel was full.

- 1 'I'll call the manager.' The waiter said _____.
- 2 'I've passed all my exams.' Phil said _____.
- 3 'You should get to the airport early.' They said that he _____.
- 4 'I may be late.' Julie said _____.
- 5 'I didn't tell anybody!' Raquel said _____.
- 6 'Can you help me?' She asked us _____.
- 7 'Do you want to dance?' He asked me _____.
- 8 'Have you been here before?' They asked her _____.
- 9 'What music do you like?' He asked me _____.
- 10 'Where's the nearest bank?' I asked him _____.

b Complete the reported imperatives and requests.

'Don't stop here.' The traffic warden told us not to stop there.

- 1 'Be quiet!' My dad told us _____.
- 2 'Please don't smoke!' We asked them _____.
- 3 'Open your mouth.' The dentist told him _____.
- 4 'Don't tell anyone!' Melinda told them _____.
- 5 'Could you show me your driving licence?' The policeman asked her _____.
- 6 'Please switch off your mobiles.' The flight attendant told them _____.
- 7 'Don't eat with your mouth open!' She told her son _____.
- 8 'Can you bring me the bill, please?' We asked the waiter _____.
- 9 'Get off at the next stop.' The bus driver told her _____.
- 10 'Don't wait.' My husband told me _____.

6B

a Correct the mistakes in the highlighted phrases.

The best perfumes made in France, are made in France.

- 1 A new hotel is being build at the moment.
- 2 The book based on a true story.
- 3 The match were watched by millions of people.
- 4 His wallet was stole when he was in the restaurant.
- 5 The Harry Potter books were written for JK Rowling.
- 6 I couldn't give you a lift because my car was repairing.
- 7 They will taken to the concert at 7.30.
- 8 Oh good! The meeting has being cancelled.
- 9 English is spoke in this hotel.
- 10 Life jackets must wear in an emergency.

b Rewrite the sentences with the passive.

They sell cold drinks here. Cold drinks are sold here.

- 1 They subtitle a lot of foreign films.
A lot of foreign films _____.
- 2 Someone threw the documents away by mistake.
The documents _____.
- 3 Some people are painting my office.
My office _____.
- 4 They have sold all the best seats for the concert.
All the tickets for the concert _____.
- 5 They will play the match tomorrow.
The match _____.
- 6 Somebody must pay this bill tomorrow.
This bill _____.

6C

a Complete with *who, which, where, or whose*.

The man whose car I crashed into is taking me to court.

- 1 He went to the office _____ he used to work.
- 2 The man _____ was talking to you is a famous actor.
- 3 That's the woman _____ house was robbed.
- 4 The washing machine was an invention _____ changed women's lives.
- 5 That's the new shop _____ he told us about.
- 6 Is this the place _____ you met your girlfriend?
- 7 What was the name of that boy _____ sister is an actress?
- 8 The man _____ came to see you was very strange.
- 9 It's the band _____ won the MTV music awards.
- 10 This is the film _____ everybody is talking about at the moment.

c Are the highlighted phrases right (✓) or wrong (✗)? Correct the wrong ones.

After Budapest we went to Vienna, that we loved. ✗
which we loved

- 1 Is that the man you used to go out with?
- 2 My sister, that you met at my wedding, is having a baby.
- 3 It's a machine that makes sweets.
- 4 She lives in Alicante, that is on the east coast of Spain.
- 5 Our friends, who garden is smaller than ours, have two dogs and three cats.
- 6 Marta, who I work with, is married to our boss.
- 7 The concert I saw last night was awful.
- 8 I met some people who they come from the same village as me.

b Tick (✓) the sentences in a where you could leave out the relative pronoun.

7A third conditional

third conditional sentences: *if + had + past participle, would + have + past participle.*

If I'd **known** about the meeting, I **would have gone**.
 If I **hadn't gone** to that party, I **wouldn't have met** my wife.
 You **wouldn't have been** late if you'd **got up** earlier.
 We **would have arrived** at 6.00 if we **hadn't got lost**.

- The contraction of *had* is 'd.

- Use third conditional sentences to talk about a hypothetical / imaginary situation in the past (which didn't happen) and its consequence. Compare:
Yesterday I got up late and missed my train (= the real situation).
If I hadn't got up late yesterday, I wouldn't have missed my train (= the hypothetical / imaginary situation).
- To make a third conditional, use *if + past perfect* and *would have + past participle*.

7B question tags, indirect questions

question tags

positive verb, negative tag	negative verb, positive tag
It's cold today, isn't it?	She isn't here today, is she?
You're Polish, aren't you?	You aren't happy, are you?
They live in Ankara, don't they?	They don't smoke, do they?
The match finishes at 8.00, doesn't it?	She doesn't eat meat, does she?
She worked in a bank, didn't she?	You didn't like the film, did you?
We've met before, haven't we?	She hasn't been to Rome before, has she?
You'll be OK, won't you?	You won't tell anyone, will you?

- Question tags are often used to check something you already think is true.
Your name's Maria, isn't it?
- To form a question tag use:
 - the correct auxiliary verb, e.g. *do / does* for the present, *will / won't* for the future, etc.
 - a pronoun, e.g. *he, it, they*, etc.
 - a negative tag if the sentence is positive, and a positive tag if the sentence is negative.

indirect questions

direct question	indirect question
Where's the bank?	Could you tell me where the bank is?
What time do the shops close?	Do you know what time the shops close?
Is there a bus stop near here?	Do you know if there's a bus stop near here?
Does this train go to Victoria?	Could you tell me if this train goes to Victoria?

- To make a question more polite we often begin *Could you tell me...?* or *Do you know...?* The word order changes to subject + verb, e.g. *Do you know where the post office is?* NOT *Do you know where is, the post office?*
- If the question begins with an auxiliary verb, add *if* (or *whether*) after *Could you tell me...? / Do you know...?*
- We also use this structure after *Can you remember...?*, e.g. *Can you remember where he lives?*

7C phrasal verbs

group 1: no object – verb and *up, on*, etc. can't be separated.

Come on! Hurry up! We're late.
 The plane **took off** two hours late.
Go away and never **come back!**

group 2: with object – verb and *up, on*, etc. can't be separated.

I'm **looking for** my keys. NOT I'm looking my keys for.
 I **asked for** chicken, not steak.
 Please **look after** the baby.
 I don't **get on with** my sister.
 I'm **looking forward to** the party.

group 3: with object – verb and *up, on*, etc. can be separated.

Please **switch off** your phone. / Please **switch** your phone **off**.
 Can you **fill in** this form, please? / Can you **fill** this form **in**, please?
 They've **set up** a new company. / They've **set** a new company **up**.
 Don't **throw away** those papers. / Don't **throw** those papers **away**.

- A phrasal verb is a verb combined with a particle (= an adverb or preposition).
- Sometimes the meaning of the phrasal verb is obvious from the verb and the particle, e.g. *sit down, come back*.
- Sometimes the meaning is not obvious, e.g. *give up smoking* (= stop smoking), *carry on talking* (= continue talking).
- In group 3, where the verb and particle can be separated, if the object is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and particle.
Switch it off. NOT *Switch off it.*
Throw them away. NOT *Throw away them.*

⚠ Sometimes a phrasal verb has more than one meaning, e.g. *The plane took off. He took off his shoes.*

7A

a Match the phrases.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1 If you hadn't reminded her, I | A if you'd understood the joke. |
| 2 You wouldn't have had an accident | B we wouldn't have got lost. |
| 3 If they hadn't arrived on time, | C if we'd had enough money. |
| 4 They wouldn't have come | D he would have seen us on TV. |
| 5 We would have gone on holiday | E if you'd asked me to stay. |
| 6 If you hadn't told me it was her birthday, | F if we'd bought tickets on the Internet. |
| 7 You would have laughed | G if you'd been more careful. |
| 8 I wouldn't have left | H they would have missed his speech. |
| 9 If he'd stayed at home last night, | I she would have forgotten. |
| 10 If they'd given us better directions, | J I wouldn't have bought her a present. |
| 11 It would have been easier | K if they'd known Frank was there. |

b Cover A–K. Look at 1–9 and try to remember the end of the sentence.

c Complete the third conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

If you *hadn't helped* me, I *wouldn't have finished* on time. (not help, not finish)

- They _____ if the goalkeeper _____ injured. (win, not be)
- If I _____ he was so poor, I _____ him. (know, not marry)
- She _____ you some money if you _____ her. (lend, ask)
- If they _____ more money, they _____ it on a five star hotel. (have, spend)
- I _____ to take you if you _____ me yesterday. (be able, tell)
- If he _____ us yesterday, we _____ our plans. (ask, change)
- You _____ the film if you _____ with us. (enjoy, come)

7B

a Complete with a question tag (*are you?*, *isn't it?*, etc.)

Her name's Helen, *isn't it?*

- You don't like milk, _____?
- They're working this week, _____?
- He can't be famous, _____?
- She eats fish, _____?
- You won't be shy, _____?
- She was married to Brad Pitt, _____?
- We've been here before, _____?
- You didn't invite Carlos, _____?
- You would like to stay, _____?
- It's a holiday today, _____?

b Make indirect questions.

Where's the station? Could you tell me *where the station is?*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Where do they live? | Do you know _____? |
| 2 Is there a bank near here? | Can you tell me _____? |
| 3 Where can I buy some stamps? | Do you know _____? |
| 4 Does this bus go to the castle? | Could you tell me _____? |
| 5 What time do the shops open? | Do you know _____? |
| 6 Where are the toilets? | Could you tell me _____? |
| 7 Is Susan at work today? | Do you know _____? |
| 8 Did Milan win last night? | Do you know _____? |
| 9 Where did we park the car? | Can you remember _____? |
| 10 What's the time? | Could you tell me _____? |

7C

a Complete with the right particle (*in*, *on*, etc.).

What time did they get *up* today?

- Could you turn _____ the volume? I can't hear it.
- He's in a meeting. Could you call _____ later, say in an hour?
- Hurry _____! We'll miss the start of the film.
- The game is _____! Rafa Nadal has won.
- How long have they been going _____ together?
- Did you have dinner at home or did you eat _____?
- You should always warm _____ before running.
- We wake _____ late at the weekend.
- I don't know this word, can you look it _____ in a dictionary?
- We need to find _____ how much it costs.

b Rewrite the sentences. Replace the *object* with a pronoun. Change the word order where necessary.

Turn on *the TV*. *Turn it on.*

- Take off *your gloves*.
- Could you look after *the dogs*?
- Do you get on with *your mother*?
- Switch off *your computers*.
- I'm looking for *my shoes*.
- Please pick up *that paper*.
- Turn down *the TV*!
- I'm really looking forward to *the party*.
- Can I try on *this coat*?
- Don't throw away *that book*!



OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008

2012 2011 2010 2009 2008

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press,
or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside
the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and
their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only.
Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

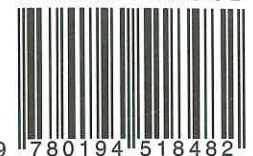
ISBN: 978 0 19 451848 2

Printed and bound by Eigal S.A. in Portugal

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

OXFORD ENGLISH
ISBN 978-0-19-451848-2



9 780194 518482